

# TRANSCRIPT OF PROCEEDINGS

---

IN THE MATTER OF: )  
 )  
BACTERIOPHAGE THERAPY: )  
SCIENTIFIC AND REGULATORY ISSUES )  
PUBLIC WORKSHOP )

(This transcript has not been edited or corrected, but appears as received from the commercial transcribing service. Accordingly the Food and Drug Administration makes no representation as to its accuracy.)

Pages: 1 through 300  
Place: Rockville, Maryland  
Date: July 10, 2017

---

## HERITAGE REPORTING CORPORATION

*Official Reporters*  
1220 L Street, N.W., Suite 206  
Washington, D.C. 20005-4018  
(202) 628-4888  
contracts@hrccourtreporters.com

BEFORE THE DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES  
U.S. FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION

IN THE MATTER OF: )  
 )  
BACTERIOPHAGE THERAPY: )  
SCIENTIFIC AND REGULATORY ISSUES )  
PUBLIC WORKSHOP )

Room 1D-13  
NIAID Conference Center  
5601 Fishers Lane  
Rockville Maryland

Monday,  
July 10, 2017

The parties met, pursuant to the notice, at  
8:37 a.m.

MODERATORS:

RANDALL KINCAID, Ph.D.  
NIAID

PAUL CARLSON, Ph.D.  
Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
Research, FDA

PARTICIPANTS:

DORAN FINK, MD, Ph.D.  
Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
Research, FDA

CARA FIORE, Ph.D.  
Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
Research, FDA

JÉRÔME GABARD, Ph.D.  
Pherecydes Pharma

JASON GILL, Ph.D.  
Department of Animal Science, Texas A&M

PARTICIPANTS: (Cont'd.)

ANDRZEJ GÓRSKI, MD, Ph.D.  
Hirszfeld Institute of Immunology and Experimental  
Therapy, Polish Academy of Sciences

MARION GRUBER, Ph.D.  
Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
Research, FDA

BETTY KUTTER, Ph.D.  
Faculty Emeritus, The Evergreen State College

SUSAN LEHMAN, Ph.D.  
AmpliPhi Biosciences

PETER MARKS, MD, Ph.D.  
Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
Research, FDA

DEEPAK NARAYAN, MD  
Yale University School of Medicine

ROBERT T. "CHIP" SCHOOLEY, MD  
Department of Medicine, University  
of California, San Diego

SCOTT STIBITZ, Ph.D.  
Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
Research, FDA

JOSEPH TOERNER, MD, MPH  
Center for Biologics Evaluation and  
Research, FDA

RY YOUNG, Ph.D.  
Center for Phage Technology, Texas A&M

C O N T E N T S

<u>SESSION 1:</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
Bacteriophage Therapy Then and Now, Ry Young	9
Bacteriophage Therapy: The Polish Approach, Andrzej Górski	41
Multidrug-resistant <i>Acinetobacter</i> : When the Antibiotics Fail, Chip Schooley	61
Phage Therapy for Resistant <i>Pseudomonas</i> Dacron Graft Infection, Deepak Narayan	80
The Gap Between Phage Therapy Clinical Study and Compassionate Treatments, Jérôme Gabard	93
Panel Discussion	114
 <u>SESSION 2:</u>	
Needs and Challenges of Therapeutic Phage Characterization, Jason Gill	150
Getting from Lab Bench to Clinic: CMC and Practical Considerations for Phage Products, Susan Lehman	174
Regulatory Pathways and CMC Considerations for Bacteriophage Products, Scott Stibitz	197
Clinical Regulatory Considerations for Evaluation and the Use of Bacteriophage Products, Doran Fink	218
Single-species Antibacterial Drug Development: A Perspective from the Division of Anti- Infective Products at CDER, Joseph Toerner	241
Panel Discussion	258

P R O C E E D I N G S

(8:37 a.m.)

1  
2  
3 DR. KINCAID: Good morning, everyone, and  
4 thank you for coming. As the agency host for this  
5 meeting, I want to welcome you all. Dr. Peter Marks,  
6 the Center Director of Biologics at the FDA, will be  
7 giving some more in-depth opening remarks, but I just  
8 as a representative of NIAID, one of the co-sponsors,  
9 I just wanted to welcome you all and thank you for  
10 attending.

11 At NIAID in particular, our programmatic  
12 efforts are driven by a combination of recognition of  
13 unmet medical needs and scientific opportunity. I  
14 think we all can recognize that antimicrobial  
15 resistance is a present and growing unmet medical need  
16 that needs attention, and this meeting and you coming  
17 here today, you are bringing us scientific  
18 opportunities that we wish to capitalize on and  
19 programmatically develop projects to move forward, and  
20 so I'm very hopeful for this meeting to give us some  
21 ideas and concepts that we, in conjunction with our  
22 sister agency at the FDA, can move forward to better  
23 prepare the ground for regulatory science that will  
24 enable the development in this whole category of  
25 countermeasures.

1           So I wish you a very productive and pleasant  
2           and entertaining and educational meeting, and I'll  
3           turn it over to Peter.

4           DR. MARKS: Okay. So welcome, everyone.  
5           Thank you all for coming to this workshop on  
6           bacteriophage therapy that's covering both scientific  
7           and regulatory issues.

8           The workshop's co-sponsored by the Center  
9           for Biologics Evaluation and Research at the Food and  
10          Drug Administration, in collaboration with the  
11          National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases  
12          at the National Institutes of Health, and before I go  
13          much further I'd like to take a moment to thank those  
14          at both institutions for all of their work and their  
15          efforts putting together what should be a very  
16          engaging and informative program over the next two  
17          days.

18          I also want to take the opportunity to thank  
19          all of those who will be presenting and serving on  
20          panel discussions for making the time to travel here  
21          and to do so, all of those who have braved Metro to  
22          make it here, thank you, even those coming from  
23          locally.

24          Antibiotic development got underway  
25          seriously in the 1940s and reached its heyday in the

1 1950s and 1960s. Although initially it was the source  
2 of miraculous cures for a variety of infections that  
3 were previously difficult or impossible to treat, it  
4 was not long before the problem of resistance to  
5 antibiotics that had been developed occurred.

6 Over the past two decades, such antibiotic  
7 resistance has really escalated to crisis-level  
8 proportions, and we now have the development of  
9 Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* that's  
10 present in many communities at high levels,  
11 vancomycin-resistant enterococci, and a variety of  
12 gram-negative organisms, such as *Klebsiella* and  
13 *Pseudomonas* species, that are resistant to multiple  
14 different antibiotics. In fact, some are remarkably  
15 resistant.

16 Ironically, though it was discovered a bit  
17 over a century ago before the modern antibiotic era,  
18 bacteriophage may turn out to be important  
19 therapeutics in combatting antibiotic-resistant  
20 infections.

21 First discovered by the English  
22 microbiologist Twort in 1915 and then characterized  
23 further by the French-Canadian scientist Félix  
24 d'Herelle, it was not until decades later the details  
25 of the lytic mode of action of phage were understood.

1       Such limitations in mechanistic understanding,  
2       combined with the ready availability of antibiotics  
3       following the Second World War, led to the development  
4       of phage therapy for the treatment of human infections  
5       in the United States and Western Europe to really slow  
6       down and to be shelved for a number of decades. The  
7       work on phage therapy continued in some Eastern  
8       European countries, including Poland and Russia.

9               Over the past decade, however, the  
10       investigation of potential phage therapy has seen a  
11       renaissance globally as certain infections have proven  
12       to be quite resistant to our existing complement of  
13       antibiotics and the discovery of novel antibiotics to  
14       combat such resistance have become increasingly  
15       challenging from a practical perspective.

16              On the other hand, phage therapy appears to  
17       be non-toxic in humans and in animals, and phage have  
18       the benefit that their bacterial specificity allows  
19       sparing of the remainder of the beneficial microbiota.  
20       In addition, there's the potential to either select or  
21       engineer phage to target bacteria that develop  
22       resistance to these agents.

23              Over the next two days there will be talks  
24       and discussions covering the scientific,  
25       manufacturing, clinical, and regulatory issues

1 surrounding the use of phage therapy. Though  
2 challenges clearly remain in the development of phage  
3 therapy for the prevention or treatment of infections  
4 in humans, their potential clinical utility seems  
5 quite promising in a time when other options seem much  
6 less so, and that's particularly in certain  
7 circumstances, and thus -- let's see -- the adage  
8 "What's old is new again" seems quite appropriate when  
9 describing the situation with phage, or said more  
10 modernly, "Old is the new new," and we look forward to  
11 a very informative and productive workshop over the  
12 next days.

13 Thank you very much, and we really  
14 appreciate your coming today.

15 (Applause.)

16 DR. KINCAID: Good morning, everyone. My  
17 name is Randall Kincaid, and I'll be serving as  
18 moderator in the first session today. Just so that  
19 you're aware of it, we have an additional room, a  
20 companion room which is connected by VTC, and it is  
21 possible that if questions arise from those in that  
22 room, we will be entertaining sort of alternate  
23 questions if that comes up.

24 Before we begin, I was asked to make a  
25 couple brief statements. First of all, that each

1 speaker outside of the government was asked to submit  
2 documentation outlining their financial interests.  
3 This is an important matter, and these records are all  
4 in place. And secondly, that the proceedings of the  
5 workshop are being recorded for purposes of  
6 transcription and these will be made available at the  
7 end of our sessions. Well, it'll actually be made  
8 available after we've compiled them and all of that.

9 So, without further ado, I'd like to  
10 introduce our first speaker, Dr. Ry Young from the  
11 Center for Phage Technology at Texas A&M, who will  
12 provide us an overview of bacteriophage then and now.

13 DR. YOUNG: So thanks for putting me in a  
14 position of leading off this, I think, historic  
15 conference. Since I work on phage lysis, I usually am  
16 the last talk in a phage conference, and that's  
17 because most people don't care about lysis and a lot  
18 of people have to leave early to catch flights. I  
19 couldn't figure out why I was chosen as the first one  
20 in this case. There's lots of other people who could  
21 have been more appropriate choices for the first  
22 speaker, but given the Metro problems and the security  
23 problems, I think Randy thought a lot of people might  
24 be late, and so it's better to have a buffer in the  
25 front.

1           So we're going to -- this is going to be  
2 largely historical. I'm going to -- I'm not sure  
3 exactly why I chose to do it that way. I guess I saw  
4 the title "Phage Then and Now," and I felt pretty  
5 intimidated by that because I actually did not know  
6 much about how phage therapy had been conducted in the  
7 Phage Therapy 1.0 in the first part of the 20th  
8 Century, so I spent a lot of the last two weeks or  
9 more boning up on it, and I felt like I needed to pass  
10 what I learned or at least what I think I learned on.

11           But then I also got this stern email from  
12 Randy saying I had to not only identify my conflicts  
13 of interest but also make it clear at the beginning of  
14 the talk. I think that makes sense. So I started  
15 thinking about my conflicts of interest, and I think  
16 really you're asking for bias, and I wanted to show  
17 this slide because I am a direct descendant of the  
18 Delbrück-Luria-Stent school. I was a Ph.D. student  
19 with -- where's the pointer? Is that the pointer  
20 right here?

21           Okay, I was Ph.D. student with this man,  
22 Hans Bremer, who was the first American post-doc  
23 brought to the United States by Gunther Stent, who  
24 was, of course, kind of the Luca Brasi if you view the  
25 phage group as a gang, Gunther was the Luca Brasi of

1 that gang, and he went around recruiting talent in  
2 Germany and devastated Western Europe and brought them  
3 and seated them all over the United States, including  
4 in Texas, where I ended up after my Navy service.  
5 This is me in 1972 as a Ph.D. student. I had a little  
6 more hair. As you can see, the receding hairline was  
7 already going back, but I was imbued with the  
8 philosophy of the phage group. The place I did my  
9 training was a hotbed of phage biology; essentially,  
10 all 20 scientists worked on phages of different types.

11 And this is a quote from, a famous quote at  
12 the end of the introduction to a textbook that  
13 essentially everybody in my generation used as the  
14 textbook for phage genetics, and that was, "The  
15 strange bacteriophage therapy chapter of the history  
16 of medicine may now be fairly considered as closed."  
17 So, if there was ever a -- and this was in the 1960s,  
18 right. So, if there was ever an attempt to put  
19 something to sleep, this was it. Phage therapy sleeps  
20 with the fishes.

21 So, before I go on, I want you to notice, by  
22 the way, this was 1972 that this picture was taken. I  
23 want to acknowledge that there are -- I know two of  
24 these people, Betty Kutter and Carl Merril are here.  
25 I thought Shankar was going to be here. Is he not?

1 Menaj is not here. Well, it's too bad. So I want to  
2 point out that all three of these people have a much  
3 deeper background in the applications of phage  
4 therapy. They were all committed to convincing the  
5 scientific public that there was a future in this 20  
6 years before or 10 years at least before I even  
7 thought of it.

8 In fact, since I was up until quite recently  
9 biased by my training in the phage group, I was  
10 actually very anti-phage therapy, and if you want to  
11 notice here, these are publications in very respected  
12 journals published in 1968 and 1969 when I was still  
13 in the Navy. And, in fact, that's three years before  
14 I was back in graduate school, so these people have a  
15 much better background and perspective and should be  
16 giving this talk.

17 And, in fact, this is the way they all  
18 looked in 1972. The fact that they're so well-  
19 preserved.

20 (Laughter.)

21 Dr. YOUNG: All right. So the real conflict  
22 of interest in terms of, I guess, finances came when I  
23 was recruited to GangaGen. So, up to 2002, at the ASM  
24 convention where I was giving a lecture, I met  
25 Janakiraman or J. Ramachandran, who is the founder and

1 CEO of the company GangaGen, a company at that time  
2 based in Bangalore, and those of you who know him, he  
3 has a charismatic personality and was very eloquent in  
4 convincing me that there was a future for phage  
5 therapy.

6 He first recruited me to the Scientific  
7 Advisory Board, and I've been active on that even to  
8 about 2009. I actually served as a research director  
9 for this company in my one year of biotech, and the  
10 most important thing to note is the company actually  
11 survived that spectacularly incompetent year of mine.

12 And, in fact, they are still in business. They have  
13 products in clinical trials, and they have said hello  
14 to me, but they haven't asked me for any further input  
15 from me for about eight years, which shows that his  
16 acumen was even better.

17 But it did lead very importantly to me being  
18 able to convince the Texas A&M Board of Regents to  
19 establish a Center for Phage Technology, and I think  
20 we're the only state institution, more than \$5 million  
21 was in setup money, and four faculty positions and an  
22 annual budget have been committed to the notion that  
23 phage biology can be put to important translational  
24 uses.

25 So, overall, I have three biases, three

1 conflicts. I have the original. By training, I was  
2 very anti-phage therapy. I still am a stockholder and  
3 member of the SAB of GangaGen, so there is a second  
4 bias. And then the third bias is I'm actually running  
5 a center that is meant to promulgate the use of phage  
6 translation. So that's the truth.

7           So the main sources for this talk are these  
8 here. I won't go through reading them. I'm primarily  
9 going to be focusing on the Eaton and Bayne-Jones  
10 *Journal of American* -- this is a review commissioned  
11 by the American Medical Association back in 1934, and  
12 it's the one that's regularly cited as being the death  
13 knell of phage therapy, of Phage Therapy 1.0, and some  
14 others. I'm going to leave these for people in the  
15 PDF file, those that can look these up.

16           I am not going to be talking about, I think,  
17 a much larger group of data about phage therapy in  
18 Eastern Europe and in Europe and in France. I've only  
19 recently become aware of how deep and scientifically  
20 complex all of that record is. It was explicitly  
21 ignored in the 1934 report, and since I'm trying to  
22 bring you up to speed on what happened to phage  
23 therapy in the United States, I really couldn't, and I  
24 don't have the expertise really, and Dr. Gôrski is  
25 going to be following up and I'm sure he'll be talking

1 about that.

2           This is the outline of the talk and I'm  
3 going to -- first, I'm going to do basically a review  
4 of phage therapy in the United States, I call it Phage  
5 Therapy 1.0, a brief word about the methods and  
6 formulations that were used. I'll spend the bulk of  
7 the talk reviewing the Eaton and Bayne-Jones report.  
8 These are the conclusions. They concluded the  
9 scientific basis of phage biology was in dispute, the  
10 commercialization was premature, and I think, I hope,  
11 I should be able to convince you that there was actual  
12 bias against both phage theory and d'Herelle in this  
13 report, and then I have a one slide 20/20 hindsight on  
14 what went wrong, and then a brief segment at the end  
15 about Phage Therapy 2.0 and how it's different and  
16 proposed standards.

17           This is the first paper. This is the  
18 beginning of it all. There's d'Herelle himself. This  
19 paper was read in September 1917. It was in the  
20 French National Academy of Sciences. I believe it's  
21 the first time where bacteriophage is actually  
22 written, and even here d'Herelle is already citing  
23 some of the properties of phages that we know are  
24 critical in our attempt to use them. That is, they're  
25 very often highly specific, and he also noted they

1       could be acclimatized. In a lot of ways, that means  
2       you could, by passaging them through target strains,  
3       you could adapt them to grow more efficiently on those  
4       strains.

5               I should point out that Gunther Stent even  
6       did -- so d'Herelle passed away in the mid-1940s, and  
7       phage therapy was really not active in the United  
8       States, at least in major publications, for the entire  
9       period of the '50s, '60s and '70s. Even then, Gunther  
10      Stent found it necessary in a review of a biography of  
11      d'Herelle to vilify him if you read these statements.

12      This was written for a review in *Science Magazine*,  
13      and he couldn't say things like widely reviled, he had  
14      nothing to do with the conceptual ideological origins  
15      of molecular biology, which was ridiculous because he  
16      invented the plaque assay, without which we would know  
17      nothing about what goes on. He dearly enjoyed  
18      accepting undeserved credit. Well, we all do that.

19               (Laughter.)

20              DR. YOUNG: So you can see that Luca Brasi  
21      still had his knives out for this guy. But at the  
22      time -- this was long after d'Herelle, d'Herelle  
23      didn't know that Gunther Stent was going to try to  
24      trash his science and his reputation. d'Herelle, he  
25      had contemporary enemies. It's always bad when you

1 have an enemy whose face is on a stamp.

2 (Laughter.)

3 DR. YOUNG: And so it turns out Jules  
4 Bordet, who was high up in the Pasteur organization  
5 and a Nobel Prize winner, and I'm pretty sure that  
6 Bordetella is named for him. So he's a Nobel Prize  
7 winner who really despised d'Herelle and, in fact, was  
8 the major mover in pointing out that Twort had  
9 discovered phages two years earlier than d'Herelle.  
10 And John Northrop, who was a later Nobel Prize winner,  
11 was very much an opponent of the so-called d'Herelle-  
12 Twort Theory that phages were viruses, and then Albert  
13 Krueger, who was a prominent bacteriologist at  
14 Berkeley, was a protege of Northrop and basically his  
15 hit man, and wrote many, many anti-phage and anti-  
16 d'Herelle tracks. And it didn't help that both  
17 Northrop and Krueger were editors of major scientific  
18 journals at the time.

19 So this is their theory. They had a  
20 completely -- a theory they view was an Occam's Razor  
21 Theory, that is, a much simpler idea, and that is that  
22 basically that what phage is was a self-replicating  
23 endolytic enzyme, so that there's an enzyme that would  
24 degrade a bacteria and then in the process of  
25 degrading that bacteria to create more enzymes from

1 degrading the large molecules in the cell wall. So,  
2 effectively, it's analogous to the autocatalytic  
3 formation of trypsin from trypsinogen.

4 So, basically, their idea was lysozyme is a  
5 prion. This is the first prion theory from many, many  
6 years ago, and this was very -- because these people  
7 were so prominent and because their academic  
8 credentials and circles of contacts and editorships  
9 had a lot of sway, whereas d'Herelle didn't even have  
10 a college degree, it was difficult for d'Herelle to  
11 compete with this.

12 So d'Herelle went on to aggressively  
13 promulgate his ideas for using phage as a tool against  
14 bacterial infections. He was widely successful. In  
15 1928, he sold his company that he'd set up to make  
16 phages for a million francs, and that was the same  
17 year that d'Herelle also took his job, full  
18 professorship at Yale, and apparently he did not tell  
19 his dean about this conflict of interest in terms  
20 of -- so I actually think -- somebody may correct me  
21 here, but the company was run very badly for a while.

22 Then he eventually took it over again. But in any  
23 case, the laboratory bacteriophage, which was the  
24 company that was making up to 10,000 doses per day in  
25 the late 1930s, including a phage Phi X174, which

1 turned out to be a really key experimental phage.

2 So they sold what they called polyvalent  
3 phage capsules against dysentery, carbuncles,  
4 sinusitus, et cetera, and they supplied other  
5 companies, including Eli Lilly in the United States.

6 There were a lot of problems with these  
7 things, as you'll -- that basically we couldn't -- you  
8 expect for a premature commercialization. All of  
9 their so-called phages were simply filter sterilized  
10 lysates. There was no purification at all. There was  
11 no quality control, no standards. Assays were usually  
12 yes or no in terms of whether they worked or not.

13 The so-called polyvalent phage mixtures,  
14 which by their definition had multiple different  
15 phages, each targeted against a different bacterial  
16 potential pathogen. Sometimes these were grown  
17 together in mixed culture, and that led to  
18 simplification of the mixtures, and then the companies  
19 that distributed often put in disinfectants to  
20 preserve the phage lysates, but, of course, it does  
21 preserve them dead.

22 And this is a famous advertisement that I  
23 always showed in my phage class every year. This is  
24 the actual -- this is the advertisement for different  
25 polyvalent phage cocktails, including intesti-phage

1 and pyo-phage, and I think these are at least  
2 ancestrally related to the -- Betty, isn't that right?

3 They're ancestrally related to the ones --

4 DR. KUTTER: In the 1930s.

5 DR. YOUNG: -- to Billeci. Yeah.

6 DR. KUTTER: We still have some of the  
7 vials.

8 DR. YOUNG: Right. And the intesti-phage  
9 and pyo-phage mixtures have been developed and matured  
10 and also sequenced, I think, now, so we now know what  
11 was in them, at least in some of them.

12 Anyway. So this is a phage for whatever  
13 ails you. I notice here that this is 1936. It says  
14 it's under the control of Dr. d'Herelle. So this  
15 might be after he re-took control of the company.

16 But one thing I noticed in reviewing this  
17 literature was that there was a corruption of the word  
18 "polyvalent." So polyvalent was originally meant to  
19 mean multiple different phages, each targeted against  
20 a different strain, a different bacterial genus, so  
21 the pyo-phage would have phages against all possible  
22 or as many possible important bacterial enteric  
23 pathogens.

24 But polyvalent come to mean as in general  
25 usage as any phage preparation that would attack

1 multiple different "races" or strains of the same  
2 species. So you have to be careful when you're  
3 reading the literature. They say polyvalent phage X,  
4 and you realize it's not really a polyvalent phage,  
5 it's a phage that plays against several host strains.

6 Okay. So there was, because of this lack of  
7 standardization and the other practices, for about a  
8 decade, there were many, many clinical studies done or  
9 treatments done and reported using these commercial  
10 preparations. There were at least four companies  
11 involved, and it led Margaret Straub and Martha  
12 Applebaum to publish in 1933 in *Journal of American*  
13 *Medical Association* their standardization. They went  
14 out and bought three samples. I think they had three  
15 of the four companies represented: Eli Lilly, Squibb,  
16 and Swan-Myers. Squibb called their preparation  
17 polyvalent phage for staph. Eli Lilly called it  
18 staphyl gel.

19 And they basically tested these off the  
20 shelf. They didn't ask the -- they bought them and  
21 tested their activity, and their findings were that  
22 the Lilly products contained an antiseptic that simply  
23 killed the phage and all the bacteria they mixed it  
24 with. The Squibb phage were highly variable. The one  
25 batch they bought had virtually no phage activity in

1 it. The next had high phage activity. And Swan-Myers  
2 had a potent staph phage in it, but it had, even  
3 though it was reputed to be effective against B. coli,  
4 it had no activity against any kind of colon bacteria.

5 So this was kind of a warning shot that the  
6 stuff that was being used at least from commercial  
7 sources wasn't reliable. It is interesting that they  
8 showed their bias a little bit here because they  
9 wanted to say that the reason why they're doing this  
10 is is they wanted to protect the reputation of genuine  
11 bacteriophage. So I thought that was -- it made me  
12 feel good that they actually cared.

13 So I actually ran -- I encountered a 1930  
14 sales manual for Eli Lilly which I thought was  
15 interesting. There are industry representatives here,  
16 and Lilly arguably is one of the most certainly  
17 prominent bio and pharmaceutical company. So this is  
18 a manual that each new salesman was given in I think  
19 it was a week-long training course. So it's organized  
20 by lessons, and the next to last lesson, Lesson 38, is  
21 bacteriophage because Eli Lilly was selling  
22 bacteriophage, and so I highlighted some of the things  
23 here.

24 They were very cagey about what they said  
25 these things were. They wanted their salespeople to

1 be able to talk to doctors and be able to answer  
2 questions, and they carefully note here that the  
3 Twort-d'Herelle hypothesis that these are basically  
4 viral living particles is not accepted yet by other  
5 investigators, and then very explicitly in italics,  
6 this is their italics, "It is too soon to evaluate  
7 phagotherapy," even though they're selling these  
8 lysates.

9           So these are the lysates that were sold and  
10 I believe at least two of these were directly from the  
11 bacteriophage company in Paris that d'Herelle had  
12 founded. So here it shows how they're prepared and,  
13 in fact, merthiolate is added to preserve, and I'm  
14 sure, although merthiolate's not hugely bad for phage,  
15 if you have it around for a month, I think it probably  
16 will kill it. It's very important to note that under  
17 what name are the bacteriophage filtrates licensed by  
18 NIH, and they're licensed as bacterial antigens, never  
19 as bacteriophages. So that was something that each  
20 salesperson had to say. These are not phages, these  
21 are antigenic lysates.

22           But they did come to the same conclusion  
23 that when you had failures with phage it was because  
24 there was a mismatch between the phage and the  
25 targeted bacteria. So they were of obviously a very

1 mixed mind about the whole process.

2 Okay. So this is the report. It was  
3 commissioned by the AMA, the so-called Council on  
4 Pharmacy and Chemistry. It was published over three  
5 issues of the *Journal of American Medical Association*  
6 with the explicit endorsement of the council, and I'm  
7 just going to highlight the things that are important.

8 They set out at the top to evaluate two  
9 things: the bacteriophage phenomenon, which I was a  
10 little surprised by, I didn't realize that they were  
11 going to evaluate the basic science; and then the  
12 therapeutic usefulness of bacteriophage.

13 And I did a little work looking into the  
14 background of the people who wrote this, and it turns  
15 out that Stanhope Bayne-Jones may have had a conflict  
16 of interest or at least a little bit of a question  
17 mark about him being assigned to do this. He had just  
18 taken the bacteriology position at Yale that had been  
19 vacated under very hostile circumstances by d'Herelle  
20 in 1933. The dean at Yale had basically invited  
21 d'Herelle to leave. He had first become afoul with  
22 him when he found out about his commercial  
23 connections, but also because he essentially never  
24 stayed there for more than a month at a time, and he  
25 also had a superb talent for pissing people off.

1           So Stanhope Bayne-Jones was already -- at  
2           least you could argue that he might have been a little  
3           bit -- he may have tended more to find fault with  
4           d'Herelle than if he wanted to make his new dean  
5           happy.

6           He actually is a very stand-up guy, ended up  
7           a brigadier general. He was a multi-decorated war  
8           hero from World War I. He was the first person to  
9           study phage lysates with millisecond imaging, so he's  
10          a hero of mine, and he was actually a major mover in  
11          the 1964 Surgeon General's report that started the  
12          anti-smoking campaign. So, I mean, I don't want to  
13          cast any bad -- he certainly was a very consequential  
14          figure.

15          And so they really point out that they are  
16          summarizing about 100 studies, and so the first thing  
17          that hit me was, my gosh, that's already selected.  
18          There were more than -- it turns out there were more  
19          than 100 studies out there, and they only wanted to  
20          review the ones that they felt were most significant.

21          But I now worry that this meant that they didn't  
22          review the Eastern and French literature for this very  
23          reason. And it also might be a language problem.

24          Okay. So this is the organization. I'm not  
25          going to go through it all, but basically the first

1 part of it is evaluating the theory and the rest of it  
2 is evaluating the actual on a disease-by-disease  
3 basis, and, finally, there are summary and  
4 conclusions. Up to now I had never read anything but  
5 No. 6.

6 So I'll just quickly summarize what -- the  
7 first part where they are looking at the mode of  
8 action, the theories, the origin, it was all kind of a  
9 hodgepodge. Its literature is of 1933, and when I  
10 read this, I was quite pleased because they were very,  
11 very measured. They came to conclusions that were  
12 perfectly reasonable in terms of specificity, the fact  
13 that you could adapt them by passage and phages. They  
14 even had the size of particles approximately right,  
15 and the fact that they're antigenic themselves, and  
16 that they were in most part robust in storage but were  
17 sensitive to antiseptics.

18 And then they pointed out that you could get  
19 phage-resistant variants after treatment, and those  
20 variants could have either increased or decreased  
21 pathogenicity. So up to that -- when I finished  
22 reading that, I thought, wow, these guys were really  
23 on top of it. And so then you read this.

24 The last sentence, "It's obvious there is  
25 great significance and importance. However, it's been

1 exploited detrimentally by manufacturers." So I  
2 thought, uh-oh, that doesn't sound good. And then I  
3 moved on, and then they end this section by saying in  
4 the composition that the phage preparations are just  
5 lysates and that part, it was accurate, at least at  
6 that time.

7           So the dagger came in the start of the  
8 section of a review of phage therapy in terms of  
9 practice. The first dagger comes in the first section  
10 about *in vitro* experiments and they cite, there were  
11 12 studies cited. Other than d'Herelle, there were 12  
12 extant studies, and they find uniformly that serum or  
13 blood and also bile either eliminated phage activity  
14 or greatly inhibited it, and by name they explicitly  
15 refute d'Herelle's experiments that had been published  
16 10 years before as being unreproducible. And, first  
17 of all, I had never heard this. I never heard that  
18 serum inactivates phage.

19           And then the second section was *in vitro*  
20 bacteriophage therapy in experimental animals. There  
21 were 21 cases of animal experimentations cited. All  
22 of them were negative. In each case, it was done the  
23 right way. They were active on the bacterial strain  
24 and infection model using a variety of animals and a  
25 variety of disease-causing bacteria, and their

1 conclusion was uniformly negative that in no case  
2 where animal model experiments had been successful,  
3 and explicitly again named d'Herelle's S. pullorum  
4 experience in chickens as being unreproducible.

5 So, bottom line, phages are inhibited by  
6 blood and have not been shown to have efficacy in  
7 animal models, and at that point, the game was over  
8 because for the rest of the report they're simply  
9 going through and trying to explain away any positive  
10 results because, as far as they're concerned, if it  
11 didn't work in experimental animals where you could do  
12 controlled experiments, the rest of it was just  
13 confirmation bias.

14 So here's the next section, there's the  
15 eight different disease things, and we obviously can't  
16 go through that in a very short time, but the whole  
17 experimental evaluation in human infection starts with  
18 this: "The many good reports make it difficult to  
19 assert that lytic filtrates are without effect." So  
20 they're complaining about the fact that they can't  
21 just say there's no effect.

22 But then they go through and find for each  
23 disease system here why the positive results that were  
24 reported were not significant, and so basically they  
25 were so biased by their finding that animal tests had

1       been uniform failures, they concluded phage therapy  
2       had undemonstrated validity.

3               They do point out that in the cases where  
4       negative they did the right thing. They said in most  
5       of the negative cases it's very likely due to the way  
6       the experimenter or the physician was using them, that  
7       the phages simply didn't work *in vitro* on the  
8       bacterium, and they, in fact, concluded in this very  
9       negative diatribe that for this reason *in vitro* lysis  
10      should always be demonstrated. So flash forward to  
11      Phage Therapy 2.0 now, that's sort of the way we're  
12      working, that we make sure that the disease bug is  
13      sensitive to the phages that are used.

14              So I'll skip down here. There were more  
15      than 80 citations, including 70 studies involving  
16      thousands of patients. I've said already that they're  
17      essentially either inconclusive or negative value.  
18      They make a big point to refute d'Herelle's success,  
19      the most highly publicized success with both cholera  
20      and plague, and in all these cases which appear to be  
21      well controlled, including double-blind experiments,  
22      they said they were unable to reproduce d'Herelle's  
23      results, and mentioned him by name. The one exception  
24      is local infections, boils, furunculosis,  
25      staphylococcus.

1           So they had so many and apparently well done  
2 studies with staph infections and boils and skin  
3 eruptions that they were unable to come up with any  
4 saying that they were possibly efficacious. Nearly  
5 uniformly positive. And in this case, they used both  
6 commercial phages and home brewed phages where the  
7 physician just went and isolated phages from sewage  
8 and used them directly.

9           Okay. So there were 11 summaries and  
10 conclusions after this long thing. I'll just show a  
11 few of them here.

12           First of all, and I think the tell tale of  
13 the bias in this, their very first statement was,  
14 "d'Herelle's bacteriophage is probably an inanimate  
15 enzyme, not a virus parasite." So the Prion Theory.  
16 So there was not a shred of evidence evaluated in this  
17 entire long review, and they started off saying that  
18 it was undemonstrated. Now they're coming down on the  
19 side of the Northropites and the Prion stories. I  
20 just find that amazing.

21           It says it repeated their finding that lytic  
22 action was inhibited by blood, and they find positive  
23 results only for local staphylococcus infections and  
24 possibly cystitis. They just say they would be  
25 convincing. Importantly, there's no evidence that

1 phage lysis or phage killing or propagation occurs *in*  
2 *vivo* at all, and then favorable results may have been  
3 due to immunizing action of the bacterial proteins in  
4 the broth filtrates.

5           So this is my sort of 20/20 hindsight  
6 version of this. First of all, I think the fix was  
7 in. I think if you read this, you know, it's not an  
8 airplane read, but if you ever sit down and read it,  
9 I've read the whole thing and I've read about a third  
10 of the cited English language studies, they never miss  
11 an attempt to specifically denigrate d'Herelle or  
12 d'Herelle's hypothesis, and as I said, they ignored  
13 the Eastern European and French studies that were far  
14 more positive and had, I think, irrefutable anecdotal  
15 data in terms of statistics.

16           In almost every case that I've read so far,  
17 no matter what the physician said they used, actually,  
18 they would often claim to use polyvalent phage, but,  
19 in fact, in almost every case I think you can presume  
20 that they used a single phage, and in most cases, they  
21 did not test that single phage against the bacterium  
22 in every case of infection that they tested.

23           So very likely these were simply -- many of  
24 the failures were due to specific mismatches or you  
25 could certainly get -- with a single phage, you will

1 almost certainly get rapid rise of resistant bacteria.  
2 And the frequent successes with staph, I think, can be  
3 due to the fact of the omnipresence of phage K. So  
4 what's phage K?

5 So phage K is I call the mother of all  
6 polyvalent phages. Phage K is actually closely  
7 related or related to the very first phage that Twort  
8 identified back in 1915. It's a large 130 kb DNA  
9 myophage, which means there's a contractile tail.  
10 There are 30 whole genomes that are greater than 90  
11 percent identical in RefSeek and Genvac. All right.  
12 So 99 percent of the -- the phage K is 99 percent  
13 identical to Team One, which is a staph phage in the  
14 Tbilisi cocktail, and it was actually first described  
15 in the Vurnet Laboratory in Australia in 1935. Based  
16 on just a very quick survey, this phage has been  
17 patented many times.

18 (Laughter.)

19 DR. YOUNG: And so why are phage K and its  
20 relatives polyvalent phages in itself? The main  
21 reason is that the receptor for phage K is an N-Acetyl  
22 glucosamine in the cell wall of teichoic acid, and the  
23 key thing to that is that that is essential for the  
24 viability of -- so this phage has found a receptor  
25 that can -- essentially very difficult to change it or

1       lose it because the bacteria will be inviable.

2               The other thing that's unique about it is  
3       that there's not a single instance of GATC in the  
4       130 kb genome.  If there's evidence for intelligent or  
5       at least sadistic design, this is one of them.  So by  
6       random statistics you expect 300 of these in that  
7       sequence and there's not a single one, which gives us  
8       automatically immune to restriction by the major  
9       restriction enzyme of the staph aureus.

10              And finally there's what I call type  
11       dominance.  If you go out and look for virulent phages  
12       in any sewage or environmental sample that plate on a  
13       large collection of staph, you'll always get phage K.  
14       There's another type, a small photophage that you can  
15       get, but they're usually a very narrow host range.  
16       Phage K is recognized in wall teichoic acid.  It's  
17       what you get and it doesn't matter where you isolate  
18       it, in Japan or United States or anywhere else.  So  
19       just somehow for some reason there's been a bottleneck  
20       in the history of staph aureus, and it completely went  
21       to phage K and its friends.

22              Okay.  So I think in the interest of time  
23       I'm going to skip down to the next section.  I do say  
24       I am still confused and I would love to have somebody  
25       help me think through this, why the serum results were

1 so uniformly negative and surely there are modern data  
2 that somebody's published that can refute this, and  
3 why were the animal experiments so uniformly  
4 successful.

5 The simplest Occam's Razor argument is that  
6 they were careful in what they cited and that there  
7 was anti-confirmation bias, but I don't want to  
8 conclude that until I know more about what was  
9 actually going on at that time.

10 So, in the last few years, obviously,  
11 there's been -- so that Phage Therapy 1.0 died and was  
12 put to death basically mainly by that 1934 report  
13 which I find was highly biased. In the last few  
14 years, there's been an acceleration because of the  
15 onset of multiple drug resistance, as you all well  
16 know. We had this wonderful meeting like this just  
17 two years ago, in July. It already feels like a  
18 decade has passed in terms of what's going on, and  
19 just this last year there have been successful  
20 emergency IND phage treatments, which you're going to  
21 be hearing about in detail.

22 And so I had no role in this except as  
23 somebody who had emails come in and sent emails out.  
24 That's basically what I did. So this is a picture of  
25 the -- and this is my total experience with phage

1 therapy, so I don't have to do a meta analysis. So  
2 I'm just going to state the facts, and most of you  
3 have read about this. Tom Patterson contracted a  
4 *Acinetobacter baumannii* infection, spent months in the  
5 ICU, and then the physician, Chip Schooley, who will  
6 be taking to you very soon this morning, obtained  
7 permission via the eIND mechanism for attempting phage  
8 therapy. The strain which we will call TP1, Tom  
9 Patterson 1 was isolated and it was shown to be  
10 multiple drug resistant and was shipped to -- at the  
11 end of February 2016, the Patterson team contacted two  
12 agencies, our agency, Center for Phage Technology, and  
13 the BDRD at the U.S. Naval Medical Research Center for  
14 phages having obtained, I guess, the eIND permission.

15 So this was the last week in February.

16 So what we did was we solicited phages from  
17 everybody we could think of because we didn't have  
18 any, and we got a bunch of phages from AmpliPhi. I  
19 have to say that it was a uniformly yes answer, forget  
20 the paperwork, don't worry about IP. Instantly people  
21 ran to the mailboxes and sent their phages, and we  
22 tested, I think, 40 phages from around the world and  
23 one of them worked against this strain and that was  
24 the one from AmpliPhi, and we spent about a month  
25 isolating new phages.

1           The Navy already had a wonderful, large,  
2           complex collection of AB phages, and they have a very  
3           efficient plate reader-based semi-automated liquid  
4           growth testing system. So they were contacted later,  
5           and they were able to identify phages much faster.

6           And then the two sources prepared phage  
7           cocktails. It was a nightmare. It shut our  
8           laboratory and center and academic activities down for  
9           two full months. We eventually provided four phages  
10          each as cocktails and mixed the phages together and  
11          made phage cocktails. They were eventually shipped to  
12          UCSD Hospital mid-March 2016, and some of the  
13          cocktails were actually purified by organic solvent  
14          extraction to lower the endotoxin levels, and that was  
15          primarily done by people in Forest Rohwer's lab at San  
16          Diego State University.

17          By mid-March 2016, the CPT cocktail was  
18          administered through an abdominal drain, and the Navy  
19          cocktail was administered IV, and I think the data  
20          suggests it was the most important component. Within  
21          a week or so, there was a bacterium isolated from --  
22          was that from the blood or from the drain? I can't  
23          remember. It was a drain bug, and the strain TP3 was  
24          resistant to all the phages that were used, all eight  
25          phages that were used in the original cocktail.

1           The Navy then used their rapid system to  
2           isolate another phage that grew against TP3, and was  
3           able to then use that to modify the IV cocktail.  
4           Phage therapy continued for eight weeks, and the  
5           patient recovered, and there he is. I think the  
6           Superman designation should be on her chest because  
7           she is a super woman, and she and Dr. Chip Schooley  
8           need to have -- in fact, I think there's going to be a  
9           movie about them. Isn't that right? Who's playing  
10          you, Chip? Is it Tom?

11           DR. SCHOOLEY: Jack Black.

12           DR. YOUNG: Oh, Jack.

13           (Laughter.)

14           DR. YOUNG: All right. So that's Phage  
15          Therapy 2.0 from my point of view. There are some  
16          others and we'll hear about them here.

17           So I have questions for you. I know that  
18          half, more than half of the people here are regulators  
19          or people involved in this.

20           The single patient eIND pathway, is there a  
21          limit to the application of this mechanism? We'd like  
22          to know what happens when there's a negative outcome.  
23          From our point of view being non-regulators, it looks  
24          like it's going to continue. I get daily, I get  
25          appeals for phage therapy. There are always

1 emergencies. There's more MDR bacterial infections  
2 that are occurring and phage therapy is likely to  
3 work, so it seems like we sort of fit the bill for  
4 eINDs.

5           However, the only propagation that we used  
6 because of the urgency of our task was whether or not  
7 the phages would grow in liquid culture. We did no  
8 characterization of the phages. Of all the nine  
9 phages at the viral or molecular level, all eight  
10 phages used in the first strain were all very similar.  
11 We think they are all large myophages and probably use  
12 the same and/or linked receptors, probably an outer  
13 membrane lipopolysaccharide. And so, in this case,  
14 Phage Therapy 2.0 was the same as Phage Therapy 1.0.

15           So I'll just come to the bottom line here.  
16 I think we ought to have -- since we have this now 100  
17 years of advanced -- there's no longer any doubt about  
18 the molecular and biological nature of phages. We  
19 have detailed knowledge of the moving parts of phages  
20 and how they work, although I think a lot more needs  
21 to be done on phages not of E. coli and B. subtilis,  
22 and we have or can develop rapidly tools for  
23 determining receptors, affinities, DNA modifications,  
24 et cetera. These are my suggestions.

25           I think we should have available phages for

1 eIND applications that have complete annotated genome  
2 sequences beforehand. They should have EM images  
3 sufficiently accurate to determine tails, tail fibers,  
4 and other attachment appendages. We should know the  
5 nature of their DNA modifications. There should be  
6 established purification and titer requirements, and I  
7 think in the long run the cocktails, that if we had  
8 that as a starting material, when the balloon goes up  
9 and an eIND is in motion, the cocktails that are  
10 assembled will have a much better likelihood of  
11 efficacy and redundancy so to avoid resistance, and  
12 the long-term, if we had hundreds or thousands of  
13 these cases, the retrospective value of having the  
14 genomic information raises an enhancing possibility  
15 that we might be able to predict efficacy strictly  
16 from genomic information.

17 So thanks for that. I hope we have -- I  
18 hope I haven't bored you too much with this  
19 retrospective, and I appreciate your patience. Forty-  
20 eight seconds left.

21 (Applause.)

22 DR. KINCAID: Well, first, I'd just like to  
23 point out that the choice of you as the first speaker  
24 was not because we expected people to be hung up on  
25 Metro or anything like that. I think you were

1 selected primarily for the strength of your intellect  
2 and, as only a true Texan could, to cover a century of  
3 events and in a story-telling manner.

4 I don't know if there's anyone who would  
5 like to ask Dr. Young a question. I think we have  
6 time for one as it turns out.

7 All right. Well -- oops.

8 AUDIENCE MEMBER: One place in your slide  
9 you mention that the company who are making this  
10 lysate indicated that this is a bacterial antigen.  
11 Did the title mention that these are actually a  
12 vaccine type of agents?

13 DR. YOUNG: So Lilly was very carefully  
14 telling their salespeople to not claim that these were  
15 phages that would lyse bacteria. But instead, these  
16 were lysates produced by phage lysis that would  
17 immunize the host. That was the official.

18 Yet, on the other hand, all of their  
19 warnings and everything suggested that the phage had  
20 to be targeted properly and should be shown to grow *in*  
21 *vivo* -- *in vitro* beforehand, so they were clearly  
22 confused, and I don't think in these days a company  
23 would go to the market with that much confusion built  
24 into the products.

25 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Thank you.

1 DR. KINCAID: All right. So we're going to  
2 move on and we'll learn from a very practical point of  
3 view the experience that has taken place in Poland  
4 over many decades, and so we're privileged to have Dr.  
5 Andrzej Gôrski from the Institute on Immunology and  
6 Experimental Therapy and the Polish Academy of  
7 Sciences. Andrzej.

8 DR. GÓRSKI: I wish to thank my colleagues  
9 from FDA and NIH for inviting me here.

10 Well, in our work, we sometimes refer not  
11 only to Félix d'Herelle, and I don't need to waste  
12 your time by going into details which were already  
13 covered by Dr. Young, and you know it from your own  
14 knowledge, but also to another famous, eminent  
15 Canadian doctor and scientist whom you know, Sir  
16 William Osler, and his accomplishments are well known  
17 in terms of his medical achievements. He's been also  
18 recognized as a philosopher and ethicist, and some of  
19 his profound statements are listed here. And we  
20 believe that our purpose in treating patients with  
21 antibiotic-resistant infection was not merely to  
22 eradicate infection but to treat the patient who has  
23 antibiotic-resistant infections, so do not treat -- do  
24 not eradicate the infection at all costs.

25 This is the institute where our center is

1 located in Wroclaw. The center, the institute is more  
2 than 50 years old, and our therapy center has been  
3 opened 12 years ago, and we operate under the umbrella  
4 of the Declaration of Helsinki and respective  
5 regulations of European Medicines Agency, as well as  
6 Polish regulations which are contained in the  
7 legislation of medical profession and the Polish  
8 Constitution and so on.

9           And I wish to emphasize again that what we  
10 are doing is experimental therapy, which is also known  
11 in Europe as compassionate use, and in America, it's  
12 often referred to as expanded access.

13           This is a kind of summary of our thinking  
14 about why experimental therapy is so important for  
15 further progress in phage therapy even though it does  
16 not formally yield the data which, let's say, could be  
17 considered as fully scientifically relevant according  
18 to the standards of evidence-based medicine.

19           Why? First of all, we have already achieved  
20 the data which support the notion that phage therapy  
21 is safe. We know that side effects are not very  
22 frequent and we know the side effects. We know what  
23 we can expect when giving the patients phages orally,  
24 indirectly, or topically.

25           We also learned a very interesting lesson

1 about the relationship between phage administration  
2 and antibody production. As you well know, there has  
3 been a common belief that antibody production to phage  
4 should be a limiting factor in the success of phage  
5 therapy, which we know it's not that simple.

6 Of course, experimental therapy can provide  
7 the idea and planning for optimal clinical trials  
8 which we have not been able to accomplish yet simply  
9 because of lack of funding.

10 Another very interesting area, and we have  
11 been deeply engaged in this area for the past 10  
12 years, is the relationship between phage and immune  
13 response, how immune system reacts to phages, but also  
14 how phages act in immune system. We have published an  
15 interesting paper recently which is available online,  
16 "Phage and Immunomodulation," and I suggest that  
17 perhaps you will find a minute to go over this paper.

18 So phage and immunomodulation is something  
19 we believe which may be also a future application in  
20 phage therapy which is not directly related to  
21 eradication of infection. And, of course, the  
22 experimental therapy is important for our promoting  
23 knowledge and fund raising.

24 I know from my own experience that the  
25 average understanding of what phages are at least in

1 Polish medical and lay communities around the globe,  
2 many doctors do not know what are phages. Medical  
3 students have very limited knowledge. So I believe by  
4 engaging in experimental therapy we also serve this  
5 very important purpose of raising awareness of what  
6 phages are, what is their current possible use, and  
7 perhaps what are the hopes for the future.

8 In my younger years, I've been facing the  
9 development of organ transplantation in my country,  
10 and sometimes I believe that the current development  
11 in phage therapy are quite similar. I remember how it  
12 was tough at the beginning to transplant a kidney. In  
13 Poland, you had to ask the prosecutor for personal  
14 approval of each transplant; otherwise it would be  
15 considered illegal. And so now we have a very active,  
16 very fruitful organ transplantation like everywhere  
17 else. Hopefully, the phage therapy should follow the  
18 same route.

19 For those of you who might be interested in  
20 this quite interesting field of ethics review of  
21 compassionate use, I would refer you to our paper  
22 which is now in press in *BMC Medicine*, which addresses  
23 specific aspects of the ethical review and dilemmas of  
24 experimental therapy.

25 Now there's nothing exceptional in our

1 approach in terms of the let's say production of phage  
2 lysates. The scheme is presented here. We also use  
3 purified phage preparations, but they are, of course,  
4 much more costly, so it's quite controversial whether  
5 or not you should charge a patient for a product which  
6 is much more expensive, yet today we don't have formal  
7 proof of efficacy. So, of course, for clinical  
8 trials, that's another issue. But for experimental  
9 therapy today, it's kind of difficult dilemma.

10 This is the current bacteriophage collection  
11 of our institute. As you may see, it's quite rich.  
12 We have more than 800 of total phages, and the  
13 specificity and range is shown on the slide.

14 And the spectra, yeah, we are very glad of  
15 our anti-staph phages, including MRSA. We cover  
16 almost 100 percent of the Polish strains, and quite  
17 high coverage for other bacteriophages, except perhaps  
18 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. We are not happy. As you  
19 see, we can cover slightly more than 50 percent of the  
20 spectrum.

21 Quite recently, we wanted to increase the  
22 efficacy and the range of our bacteriophage  
23 preparations by propagating our phages on the bacteria  
24 that were rendered plasmid- and prophage-free, and  
25 without going into the details for which I do not have

1 time, you may see that when you propagate the phage on  
2 such strains, the phage titer and positive lytic  
3 reaction may increase. So this is the initial phage  
4 titer on a host bacterium and then on a bacterium that  
5 was cleaned of PPE, and you see the increased titer  
6 and the increased positive reaction.

7 In fact, we have a short abstract describing  
8 this phenomenon, and the text of the abstract is  
9 presented here, and the main information is  
10 highlighted in this fragment of the text. Probably in  
11 summary we can increase the efficiency of our phage  
12 preparations in future by working on purified strains  
13 rather than standard initial strains.

14 The specification of our final phage  
15 preparation is depicted here. Activity, stability,  
16 degree of purification, and -- well, that's kind of  
17 our local pharmacy.

18 Now the philosophy regarding phage therapy  
19 indications, contra-indications, and termination.  
20 This has been presented many times already and, in  
21 fact, if I remember well, I presented this data in  
22 this room two years ago. They have been published, so  
23 I don't know if I should go into the details. For  
24 those of you who are interested in those details,  
25 already five years ago they were presented in our

1 paper published in *Advances in Bioresearch*.

2 But generally speaking, the philosophy and  
3 the practice is straightforward. There's nothing  
4 exceptional here, maybe except that so far most of our  
5 work has been done on monotherapy. We've been using  
6 monovalent phage preparations rather than cocktails,  
7 although we have some preliminary data on cocktails  
8 which I show you later on, but again I beg for your  
9 understanding because they are really preliminary.

10 Now, of course, what about phage therapy  
11 patient monitoring? What we do when we watch our  
12 patients? Of course, we perform clinical detail,  
13 clinical evaluation, and as you probably know, we  
14 don't have many patients because we have to spend at  
15 least one hour, and probably more, with each patient  
16 explaining to him. Sometimes there are patients from  
17 abroad, from Germany, also from U.S., so you need to  
18 explain everything starting from scratch. What are  
19 the phages? What are the pros and cons and so on and  
20 so on. So really, it's a kind of really hard work,  
21 like in our profession, of course, that's nothing  
22 exceptional, except that you really need to have to  
23 spend a substantial time to satisfy your patient and  
24 yourself.

25 And, of course, very frequently, because

1 most of them are very complicated cases, we must seek  
2 external consultant opinion. Then pathogen isolation  
3 and testing of use, and then we perform detailed lab  
4 monitoring, including CRP, blood analysis, organ  
5 function.

6 Well, regarding our patients with chronic  
7 bacterial prostatitis, we perform old 4-glass test,  
8 which enables urologists to localize where is the  
9 infection located in urinary tract.

10 Now it's a kind of historical test. I don't  
11 think it's performed in United States, but it still  
12 has its value, but we live in times when doctors have  
13 little time, so it will be probably unrealistic to  
14 recommend the testing, but it has its value and, of  
15 course, you can gain important scientific information  
16 by obtaining fluids from data and other part of the  
17 urinary tract.

18 Immune monitoring. There is, of course, an  
19 important question whether or not the effects that we  
20 are observing in response to phage therapy are not  
21 simply let's say the immunostimulatory effects of  
22 bacteria that remains on phages themselves, and  
23 according to our experience, and the experience has  
24 been published and we have quite a few papers  
25 addressing this issue, although there are, of course,

1 reactions of immune system to phages, we believe that  
2 we cannot ascribe the beneficial effects of phage  
3 therapy to mere upgrading, upregulation of immune  
4 system. We don't think it's that simple.

5 We categorize the results of our treatment  
6 into seven major categories. They are listed here,  
7 and again I will not go into details because I believe  
8 they are straightforward. Of course, we hope to  
9 obtain the Category A pathogen eradication and full  
10 recovery, but it happens rather rarely in about 10  
11 percent of cases. Overall, we consider Categories A  
12 through C as good responses to phage therapy, and D-G  
13 are considered as not a great response to phage  
14 therapy.

15 What I already mentioned and there's nothing  
16 unusual in this statement. We in our material, and  
17 this is not only in material from our phage therapy  
18 center but also historical material of the past  
19 because phage therapy in Poland is almost as old as  
20 discovery of phages. What is notable is the  
21 remarkable safety of phage therapy. Here, you see  
22 that on our material of almost 160 patients we  
23 observed good tolerance in almost 80 percent of cases,  
24 and the lack tolerance in less than 4 percent of  
25 patients, which force us to terminate treatment.

1           And we also have in press another paper  
2           which includes more recent data from the past three  
3           years. This is the characteristic of these almost 150  
4           patients, the indications for phage therapy, and the  
5           routes of administration, type of applied phages.  
6           Maybe we don't have time now to go into details but  
7           just to give you the general idea of the patient types  
8           and the way we administer our phages.

9           And those results, which have been  
10          published, so there's nothing new, in fact, in this  
11          data which I present except that we have also results  
12          from the most recent cohort of patients which have  
13          been treated in years 2011 through 2013, and you may  
14          see that it's amazingly close. The results are  
15          amazingly similar. Almost 40 percent of good  
16          responses in years 2008 to 2010, and almost the same  
17          result obtained with most recent patients.

18          So, in summary, in about 40 percent of cases  
19          we obtain something which we categorize as a good  
20          response according to the description I showed you in  
21          an earlier slide.

22          And now this good response translates to  
23          quite interesting and promising results in patients  
24          with genital and urinary tract infections. Most of  
25          those patients, although not all of them, are those

1 who had chronic bacterial prostatitis, and they have  
2 been treated using indirect administration. In this  
3 group of patients, our results seem to be quite  
4 promising, and other responses shown in other clinical  
5 settings.

6 Now I would like to stop for a moment on  
7 this slide because here again I ask for your  
8 understanding that the data are very limited and the  
9 number of patients is small. But I think it's  
10 something new and something potentially, not perhaps  
11 relevant today but potentially relevant, and it may  
12 give food for thought for future work.

13 Here, we compared the efficacy of the  
14 monovalent phage lysis versus phage cocktail. The  
15 description of the content of this preparation is  
16 provided here. Right, non-purified monovalent phage  
17 lysates, and non-purified phage cocktail, which  
18 contain a mixture of three staph phages.

19 So you see here that again using this very  
20 limited material there is very little difference  
21 between the monovalent and cocktail. However, when we  
22 used the purified cocktails, this difference was  
23 significantly higher. The results achieved with the  
24 purified phage cocktail were much better.

25 However, for that and other reasons, the

1 titer of the phage preparation was also higher, so  
2 it's difficult for me to say whether or not those  
3 better results is due to the purity or higher phage  
4 content or both. One way or another I decided to  
5 present to you this data simply because of the fact  
6 that you can achieve more than 50 percent of success  
7 using purified phage cocktail.

8 Of course, using purified phage cocktails  
9 versus monovalent cocktails, you can easily organize a  
10 conference to discuss this controversial issue, and,  
11 again, we don't have time probably to go into this  
12 philosophy today, I know. But one word of the  
13 caution, I can cite the most recent paper by Oechslin  
14 regarding this issue because there is a kind of over-  
15 enthusiasm in recommending cocktails. We'll see.

16 Now this slide shows you the changes in  
17 phage profile and acquisition of phage resistance.  
18 What is probably most important is how muted we are  
19 regarding the application of phages once the  
20 resistance develop. This resistance develops, of  
21 course, here, and these two panels show you the  
22 percentage, but still we are able to identify a phage  
23 in our phage collections to continue the treatment if  
24 it's necessary, and the percentage of this success is  
25 shown in this slide.

1           Now antiphage activity of sera from patients  
2           receiving phage therapy, we have published four or  
3           five papers already, so again I will not go into  
4           details, but what is probably most important is  
5           following oral administration the level of antibody is  
6           very low. You may also find quite low antibody  
7           production using inter-rectal administration, which is  
8           maybe unexpected, but that's the fact.

9           And most importantly, there appears to be no  
10          clear association between the level of antibody --  
11          antiphage-producing antibody in serum and the outcome  
12          of therapy, which is shown here, right, with a patient  
13          with a high level of antibodies, yet the result of  
14          treatment was good, good response, clinical  
15          improvement. In another patient who had high  
16          responses -- by the way, you may see that this level  
17          of antibodies may drop subsequently, and again we had  
18          good response to therapy.

19          So phage therapy and antibody responses is a  
20          complex story. You cannot simply say that antibody  
21          response is limited because it probably depends on a  
22          variety of factors. Some of them are listed here.  
23          Certainly, patients in neurological status, we cannot  
24          forget that at least in our material 50 percent of  
25          patients which come to our center are immunodeficient.

1 Then there is a question of route of phage  
2 administration, which I've shown. We don't get high  
3 level of antibodies using oral therapy, phage  
4 immunogenicity, phage immunogenicity varies, purified  
5 preparations versus lysates, cocktails versus  
6 monovalent phages, and type of antibody involved in  
7 phage binding.

8 Now the question how long the phage antibody  
9 persists, we show that they can eventually drop, and a  
10 kind of provocative statement because who knows  
11 whether the good antibody response to phage therapy is  
12 a good prognostic sign. Maybe. Who knows? Maybe it  
13 simply signals that the immune system recovers. It's  
14 able to provide, to offer, to mount a good immune  
15 response which does not inactivate phage, at least not  
16 at the level of periphery. Right? Who knows? We  
17 need more data.

18 Another interesting aspect is phage  
19 interactions with phagocytes. We just published a  
20 review on this, so, again, I will not go into details,  
21 but I'll show you the results from one patient, how  
22 phage therapy can contribute to, and this is one sign  
23 of let's say improvement of immune system following  
24 phage therapy regarding ability to kill bacteria by  
25 polymorphonuclear cells and monocytes.

1           So, during the successful phage therapy, as  
2           you can see here, the patient could recover -- the  
3           patient's ability to kill bacteria could significantly  
4           increase, and another, I mention phage and  
5           immunomodulation, and we have quite interesting data  
6           regarding the potential effects on phages on the  
7           indices of inflammation. Here, you see the CRP levels  
8           initially and following nine the use of therapy the  
9           value drop from 35 to 14, and then after second round  
10          of therapy to almost normal, even though the  
11          eradication has not been achieved.

12           So there is a -- again, I repeat -- a very  
13          interesting area, how phage interact with immune  
14          system, and we have published data showing that they  
15          can inhibit a reactive flux against phages.

16           We published a book on phage therapy which  
17          received a good opinion in *Lancet Infectious Diseases*,  
18          in *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, and a number of  
19          papers. One of them presents the present and future  
20          of phage therapy, and maybe I'm kind of selfish  
21          because I was the first author, but to some extent  
22          this is a kind of visionary paper.

23           And, of course, we realize that  
24          observational studies are not the evidence-based  
25          medicine. Yet I would like to cite here the statement

1 made by Dr. Califf about the value, potential value of  
2 such work, and I will in the end, I will refer again  
3 to this paper published recently in *Future*  
4 *Microbiology* about phage translocation from the lumen  
5 of intestine through surrounding tissue and gut-  
6 associated lymphoid tissue, and this has in our  
7 philosophy, in our thinking, not only -- this is not  
8 the only mechanistic let's say movement of phages, but  
9 on the way they interact with cells in immune system,  
10 which is shown here, and they may beget powerful,  
11 powerful immune reactions. We were very glad to see  
12 that this theory of phage translocation is already  
13 cited.

14 Well, what is the future? It's difficult to  
15 tell the future, but I'm sure you know the report  
16 prepared by Wellcome Trust and the projections. What  
17 are the alternatives to antibiotics for using wild  
18 type phages according to this forum only 9 percent of  
19 success? If this is so, if this is true, what is the  
20 future? What we should do in parallel to developing  
21 clinical trials?

22 This is a letter in Polish, but also it has  
23 an English portion. This is a letter which was sent  
24 by Minister of Health of Belgium to the Minister of  
25 Health of Poland. Of course, it went through the

1       bureaucracy of our Ministry of Health and this is the  
2       result, so I apologize. You don't need to read the  
3       Polish text, but you can concentrate on this portion  
4       which tells you what is most important.

5               And what is most important, and this is  
6       probably my message, I find the message that we need  
7       to develop clinical trials, but I believe, and I'm  
8       glad to see the Minister of Health of Belgium agrees,  
9       that we also need to expand the existing programs of  
10      experimental therapy. Thank you.

11               (Applause.)

12              DR. KINCAID: Do we have any questions for  
13      Dr. Górski? Could you use the microphone, please?

14              AUDIENCE MEMBER: Thank you, Dr. Górski. I  
15      have a question about your source of your phages for  
16      your institute. Are you constantly going out to  
17      environmental sources like waste water treatment  
18      plants to isolate new phages?

19              DR. GÓRSKI: Yes.

20              AUDIENCE MEMBER: Or what's your procedure  
21      about that?

22              DR. GÓRSKI: Well, the procedure is  
23      standard. I don't think I will go into technical  
24      there in details. You know, it's standard procedure  
25      for phage procurement which has been described in

1 details in a series of papers published by *Frontiers*  
2 *in Microbiology* recently. There is a paper by Beata  
3 Weber-Dabrowska, et al. under the title "Phage  
4 Procurement for Therapeutic Purposes." I think it  
5 gives you the most updated information.

6 AUDIENCE MEMBER: That's the primary source  
7 for your phages is waste water untreated sewage?

8 DR. GÓRSKI: We have also historical phages  
9 which are very old, which we inherit even from the  
10 time of Ludwik Hirszfeld, who worked, who founded our  
11 institute and before we were here, he was already  
12 working also, and he's been already engaged in the  
13 collection of the strains of phages, so part of our  
14 phages are historically related.

15 AUDIENCE MEMBER: You mentioned that you  
16 have seen a specific -- a phage-specific antibody  
17 response in about 17 percent of patients treated with  
18 single phages and about 43 percent of patients treated  
19 with cocktails. Since phages can differ in their  
20 immunogenicity, were the same phages used in the  
21 cocktails that were used individually? Is that a  
22 direct comparison?

23 DR. GÓRSKI: Yes. Yes. Yes. So it's a  
24 kind of learning. If you believe that the peripheral,  
25 peripheral antibody are peripheral -- and in the

1 presence of antibodies peripherally may be a little  
2 bit impacted for the success of phage therapy.

3 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Dr. Górski, thank you so  
4 much for very useful data on clinical use. It's very  
5 impressive. And my question about the allergy  
6 testing, what allergy --

7 DR. GÓRSKI: Allergy?

8 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Allergy. You mentioned  
9 that you test your patients.

10 DR. GÓRSKI: Very good question.

11 AUDIENCE MEMBER: And my question actually  
12 has two parts. What allergen do you use? Is it like  
13 phage, something from phage, and what method do you  
14 use for this?

15 DR. GÓRSKI: As far as allergy, we did not  
16 prohibit IgE responses, but interestingly enough, when  
17 you monitor the leukocytosis in our patients, in none  
18 of these patients we have increased value of  
19 eosinophils, which was striking. In no patient, I  
20 repeat, we had increased value of eosinophils.

21 And I'm also aware of the work of my  
22 associate, Krystyna Dabrowska, a very bright molecular  
23 biologist, and I know that she just presented a very  
24 impressive poster which she will be presenting in  
25 Evergreen, that in experimental animals, when you

1 inject phages, when you administer phages, I think she  
2 had some data, if I remember well, that there is no  
3 specific allergy to phages in mice.

4 So, very unexpectedly, there appears to be  
5 no strong allergic reaction as measured by the data.  
6 In contrast, you have a decreased CRP value, and  
7 clinically relevant allergic reactions, they can  
8 appear, but they are relatively very rare. As you  
9 mentioned, less than 4 percent patients develop such  
10 reactions that cause us to terminate the treatment.

11 AUDIENCE MEMBER: So you did not use test  
12 allergen in --

13 DR. GÓRSKI: Sorry? I did not hear you.

14 AUDIENCE MEMBER: You did not use test  
15 allergen made of phages, right? You just used  
16 indirect methods to see the allergy.

17 DR. GÓRSKI: Yeah.

18 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay. Thank you.

19 DR. KINCAID: I think what we're going to do  
20 is we're going to go to a break right now, and for  
21 those of you who do have questions, I encourage you to  
22 speak with Dr. Gôrski or Dr. Young, and we will return  
23 at 10:15. Thanks a lot.

24 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)

25 DR. KINCAID: Thank you very much. I'm also

1 going to take this moment to mention to all the  
2 speakers and to those asking questions, all of those  
3 good thoughts will go to waste, certainly as relates  
4 to the ability to be transcribed, if you don't speak  
5 into the microphone, and I would suggest to the  
6 speakers that they listen for the resonance because  
7 that's what really allows you to know that you're  
8 being heard.

9 So, without further ado, I'd like to  
10 introduce Chip Schooley from the University of  
11 California, San Diego, the Department of Infectious  
12 Diseases, who has an absolutely stunning story, one  
13 that many of you are already familiar with. It's a  
14 story that was given its initial promotion by Ry Young  
15 earlier in the day. So, without further ado, Chip.

16 DR. SCHOOLEY: Thanks very much, Randy. I'd  
17 like to thank Randy and the rest of the organizers for  
18 the opportunity to talk to you a bit about Tom  
19 Patterson, who you heard a bit about this morning from  
20 Ry Young. This is going to be a very clinical talk.  
21 I was asked to kind of give people a sense of how  
22 these cases play out in the context of an emergency  
23 IND and to talk about some of the strengths and  
24 weaknesses of this approach.

25 I am going to show pictures of the patient

1 and of his wife. They both are not just giving  
2 consent, they're actually quite enthusiastic about  
3 this.

4 So the story began in Egypt in November of  
5 2015 when they took a vacation during Thanksgiving  
6 down the Nile, and this is the inside of the boat that  
7 they were on.

8 (Laughter.)

9 DR. SCHOOLEY: Let's see if we can get this  
10 to go here.

11 Okay, we'll get this back in a second.  
12 We'll have to stop the timer here.

13 In any case, Steffanie Strathdee, the  
14 patient's wife, and Tom took a vacation over  
15 Thanksgiving 2015 to Egypt and decided to take a barge  
16 down the Nile. As they're pulling into Luxor, he  
17 developed abdominal pain and fever. Tom is a friend  
18 of mine, as is Steffanie, and they texted me and said  
19 they were concerned about Tom and wondered whether  
20 this could be gastroenteritis or something else.

21 As this played out, it became more and more  
22 clear it was something else, and it was suggested that  
23 they get to a hospital. He was a 68-year-old  
24 diabetic, a little bit overweight, and it sounded more  
25 and more like gallstone hepatitis, gallstone

1 cholecystitis and pancreatitis.

2           They went to the hospital in Luxor. They  
3 had been seen by a ship physician who saw him and gave  
4 him Gentamicin. This always works. In this case, it  
5 didn't. He showed up in the hospital and the same  
6 physician actually was running the ICU and this time  
7 gave him some fourth generation Cephalosporin, some  
8 fluids, stabilized him, and then he was evacuated to  
9 the university hospital in Frankfurt, where Stefan  
10 Zeuzem and his colleagues took care of him.

11           When he got to Frankfurt, it was found that  
12 he had a large pancreatic pseudocyst, shown here with  
13 the green tags behind his stomach, both in this plane  
14 and in this, a relatively large fluid collection. On  
15 the second hospital day in Frankfurt, they threw an  
16 endoscope into his stomach. They then used an  
17 endoscope to put two stents through the wall of his  
18 stomach into this fluid cavity to drain the abscess  
19 cavity into his stomach.

20           In this first acquisition of fluid, they  
21 grew *Candida glabrata* and *Acinetobacter baumannii* that  
22 was resistant to most antibiotics except for colistin,  
23 tigecycline and meropenem.

24           He continued to be febrile, was on pressors,  
25 was delirious. The following two days later they did

1 an ERCP, noted that his biliary tree was partially  
2 obstructed by a pre-papillary stone which was  
3 extracted, a stent was placed to establish drainage of  
4 his biliary tree. These cultures also grew  
5 *Acinetobacter baumannii*. Colistin was added.  
6 Imipenem was changed to meropenem based on some of the  
7 sensitivities that were emerging, and arrangements  
8 were made to transfer him to San Diego.

9 By the time he got to San Diego on  
10 December 12, the organism was meropenem-resistant.  
11 The GI consultants felt that he needed surgery. We  
12 felt he needed surgery. The only people who didn't  
13 were the surgeons. They were concerned about the fact  
14 that he was quite unstable, and not being able to do  
15 the surgery ourselves, we had to go along with their  
16 plan.

17 So the plan was to try to manage him  
18 medically and to drain the abscessed cavities as they  
19 evolved as you'll see percutaneously using  
20 interventional radiology throughout the course of  
21 this. He developed a pancreatic cyst. This too was  
22 drained. The *Acinetobacter* continued to develop  
23 increasing resistance as we treated him with rounds of  
24 antibiotics.

25 He then began by the middle of January to

1 grow *B. fragilis* from a number of these drains. We  
2 didn't have good control of the source of his necrotic  
3 pancreas. He had an episode of septic shock and was  
4 transferred to the ICU, and at this point in time was  
5 found to have *B. fragilis* bacteremia.

6 He shortly thereafter developed  
7 emphysematous cholecystitis. Another interventional  
8 radiology drainage tube was placed. One of our  
9 colleagues in the Department of Pediatrics did some  
10 synergy studies *in vitro* and showed that if you  
11 squinted, that if you used azithromycin, colistin and  
12 rifampin together, there was some evidence of synergy,  
13 so these were added to his antibiotic regimen.  
14 Developed some renal failure. The colistin was held  
15 and then restarted later on. He then developed  
16 increasing abdominal distension. Paracentesis  
17 revealed that *Acinetobacter* was now in his peritoneal  
18 fluid.

19 By middle of March, he had the multiple  
20 intra-abdominal collections being drained through five  
21 IR drains. We continued to try to convince the  
22 surgeons to go in and do a definitive drainage  
23 procedure, and the cycle we got into was that when he  
24 was sick they said he's too sick to operate on. Call  
25 us back when he's better. We called them back when he

1 was better. They would say he's getting better. You  
2 need to just leave him alone, let him continue to get  
3 better. So we got into this cycle through February  
4 and March in which we were not able to get him, in our  
5 view, adequately drained.

6 As time went on, though, he continued to  
7 deteriorate. Additional organ systems began to fail.  
8 He became stuporous. He ended up on two pressors. He  
9 ended up intubated on a ventilator and began to  
10 develop hepatic dysfunction in addition to his renal  
11 dysfunction.

12 This kind of gives you a sense of his  
13 course. You can see his fever curve with multiple  
14 fever spikes throughout. White count kind of bouncing  
15 around between 10- and 25,000, often in conjunction  
16 with isolations of organisms from his bloodstream and  
17 peritoneal fluid in other places.

18 His wife, Steffanie Strathdee, is really the  
19 hero of this story. She had kind of been watching  
20 this and continued to read. She is an infectious  
21 disease epidemiologist, trained as a Ph.D., not as an  
22 MD, but she is really quite versatile in microbiology  
23 and continued to read about *Acinetobacter*, and came  
24 across a paper that was published in *PubMed* about the  
25 use of *Acinetobacter baumannii* in the treatment

1 of -- I'm sorry -- of phages in the treatment of  
2 *Acinetobacter baumannii*, and she sent me this paper by  
3 email.

4 This was about mid-March, and my response to  
5 her at the time was, you know, it's not like we're  
6 really knocking the socks off this infection, we're  
7 willing to try anything at this point, and certainly  
8 there's been a lot of history of phage therapy in  
9 other places, as we've heard today. Very little  
10 evidence that it will do any harm, and certainly we're  
11 not getting where we need to go with our current  
12 approach to therapy.

13 My inward thought, however, was that the  
14 chance that we're going to find somebody to make us  
15 phages in time to be able to use them and to deal with  
16 all the bureaucracy both in terms of the local  
17 bureaucracy at UCSD and the regulatory bureaucracy  
18 outside UCSD was slim, but given the fact that we had  
19 really very little to offer and Steffanie needed some  
20 hope, we decided to go ahead and go full steam ahead.

21 She got in touch by email with the group in  
22 Georgia. They referred her to Jean-Paul Pirnay in  
23 Brussels because they had been collaborating. Dr.  
24 Pirnay said he'd love to help. In fact, he had some  
25 phages that were active against Middle East-derived

1     *Acinetobacter* and that they were in the hands of Ry  
2     Young's laboratory at Texas A&M, and she suggested  
3     that the organism be sent to Ry.

4             She telephoned him, caught him in his lab  
5     and talked to him for a little over an hour, and over  
6     the phone he decided to go ahead and try this out, and  
7     said he would commit his laboratory for the next  
8     couple of weeks to see if he could come up with  
9     something that might be used to treat her husband.

10            The organism was sent to Texas A&M, and the  
11    phage search began. Unfortunately, at the same time  
12    the phage was being -- that Dr. Pirnay had was being  
13    shipped from Belgium to UCSD, preparations were being  
14    made and it was found that that particular phage did  
15    not have activity against our patient's organism.

16            In the library at Texas A&M, one of the  
17    phage from AmpliPhi was found to have activity. Dr.  
18    Young got in touch with AmpliPhi and they very quickly  
19    said, "Of course, we'd be happy to let you use that  
20    phage." And then he looked for environmental sources  
21    of additional phage that could be used in a cocktail  
22    against this patient's organism.

23            At that point, I called the FDA to get in  
24    touch with them to tell them that we would likely be  
25    asking for an eIND to give a home brew cocktail of

1 bacteriophage to a patient with a multidrug-resistant  
2 *Acinetobacter*. The FDA reviewer, who will be running  
3 a panel tomorrow afternoon, Cara Fiore, was very  
4 supportive, in fact, and said she wanted to organize a  
5 conference call with CBER to talk about some of the  
6 issues that they had been thinking about in terms of  
7 phage therapy. That was on March 1.

8 By March 4, she had made some internal  
9 discussions and said they really only need to know  
10 about if endotoxin assays had been done, what we knew  
11 about that, and what was being done about sterility.  
12 Otherwise, they were ready to go and they didn't want  
13 these stipulations to get in the way of starting phage  
14 therapy, and we provided that information a couple of  
15 days later and had approval from the FDA to proceed  
16 relatively quickly.

17 Meanwhile, back at UCSD, there was a lot of  
18 back and forth about what this was all about.  
19 Luckily, the patient's wife was one of the deans at  
20 UCSD and she got in touch with the chancellor, who was  
21 anxious to keep her happy, and he instructed the  
22 lawyers to make sure this worked. And so we had the  
23 university attorneys on our side very early on, which  
24 was very helpful, and actually a very positive  
25 interaction with the attorneys at Texas A&M.

1           I then had to talk to the investigational  
2 drug pharmacy that would be administering the phage.  
3 They independently then contacted the Institutional  
4 Biosafety Committee, who told me that they would be  
5 meeting in three weeks to discuss the application to  
6 use -- to allow the phage into UCSD, and in the  
7 meantime, an MTA was being worked out between UCSD and  
8 Texas A&M.

9           And then, at that time, the FDA reviewer  
10 said that she also heard that there was some  
11 additional places that *Acinetobacter*-directed phage  
12 were being developed and suggested that if we wanted  
13 to, it might be useful to talk to the combined program  
14 that the Army and the Navy had been leading down the  
15 road, and she provided me with a couple of phone  
16 numbers and we decided to go ahead and do this. This  
17 was at a time when we're still full speed ahead down  
18 at Texas A&M, but we didn't yet have a phage cocktail  
19 that we could use.

20           So I got in touch with the two programs.  
21 The Navy was willing to have us ship the patient  
22 isolate to them, and we did. In the meantime -- this  
23 actually was actually sent by Ry's lab to the Navy,  
24 the first one, and they began to screen for phage as  
25 well.

1 Fairly soon, this is -- you'll see more of  
2 this tomorrow, but this is just using the Navy's  
3 Biolog approach on the Texas A&M phage. You can see  
4 that compared to the control conditions, the phages  
5 individually or in a cocktail were able to suppress  
6 the *Acinetobacter* that the patient was growing. The  
7 Navy also were developing phage, as I'll show you in  
8 just a minute.

9 The phage that -- the cocktail that was  
10 constructed were the AmpliPhi phage and three  
11 environmental phages that Ry's lab had come up with  
12 after they started the screening.

13 The plan was to go ahead and ship this  
14 cocktail to us and to do the endotoxin testing kind of  
15 as the phage were in transit. This is the Navy  
16 cocktail showing the four Navy phages and the cocktail  
17 together with the expression, "This work being done by  
18 Biswajit Biswas," who will be talking to you tomorrow  
19 about some of the issues related to preparation of the  
20 phages and selection for resistance.

21 We were back in touch with the FDA and one  
22 of the concerns we had was that each of the phages  
23 would have to be treated as an individual product,  
24 which would have required eight INDs. We were very  
25 pleased to hear that they were willing to consider the

1 therapeutic approach to this patient's organism as a  
2 single -- would be covered under a single IND and that  
3 we would only need to submit another one if we decided  
4 to switch and treat a different organism. Luckily, he  
5 didn't have a different organism that needed to be  
6 treated, so this entire process was carried out under  
7 a single eIND.

8           Then we began to run into trouble with the  
9 endotoxin. About the time the phage cocktail arrived  
10 from Texas A&M the initial endotoxin assay showed  
11 quite a bit of endotoxin in the phage preps. We  
12 weren't sure whether this was an issue related to the  
13 endotoxin itself or whether there was an artifact in  
14 the assay. The assay repeated at San Diego State  
15 again showed quite a bit of endotoxin in the preps.

16           Forest Rohwer's lab at San Diego State then  
17 was engaged to try to scrub these preps and did that  
18 with an octanol extraction that, as I'll show you in a  
19 minute, was quite successful.

20           The first batch of Navy phages arrived  
21 shortly thereafter. They too had an unacceptably high  
22 level of endotoxin in them and, when measured at San  
23 Diego State, in fact, even a log higher than was seen  
24 in the assay done at the Navy.

25           The Texas A&M phage were scrubbed at San

1 Diego State with an octanol extraction and tangential  
2 centrifugation. The Navy then made a second batch of  
3 phage and scrubbed their phage using a cesium chloride  
4 gradient, which is their approach to phage  
5 purification. And at this point, we actually had  
6 phage that were really quite clean, giving you a  
7 sense -- so this is the Navy cocktail, all of them  
8 together, showing you the endotoxin concentration per  
9 milliliter. These are the individual phage from Texas  
10 A&M. Again, much improved over the previous batches.

11 So, at this point, we had two sets of four-  
12 phage cocktails. The Navy cocktail is shown here.  
13 Each of these were environmentally obtained  
14 *Myoviridae*, as was suggested. These may well have  
15 been very similar. We really didn't have time to try  
16 to look for phage that were quite different in terms  
17 of their tropism and mechanisms of action. Same thing  
18 happened from Texas A&M for other *Myoviridae*. Again,  
19 environmental samples and shipped simultaneously.

20 The Texas A&M cocktail happened to arrive  
21 several days earlier than the Navy cocktail, and we  
22 decided that -- and then a second generation cocktail  
23 that Dr. Biswas will talk about tomorrow included a  
24 phage that was active against one of the organisms,  
25 the *Acinetobacter* that was selected for resistance to

1 all eight of the initially employed phage.

2 The phage arrive on March 15 and we have the  
3 data related to the endotoxin scrubbing, and this is  
4 the interventional radiologist, Andrew Picel, who was  
5 giving the phage into the three cavities that at this  
6 point were still being drained. The approach taken  
7 was to irrigate the cavities, then to introduce ten to  
8 the ninth plaque-forming units into each of the  
9 abscessed cavities, cross-clamped the cavity for about  
10 half an hour and then allowed the cavities to drain.

11 We saw a change in the characteristics of  
12 the drainage fluid, the pseudocyst, for example,  
13 before and after the phage were administered. Whether  
14 this is causal or not, we don't know, but certainly we  
15 did see a change in the characteristics of the  
16 drainage fluid.

17 About two days later the Navy phage cocktail  
18 were ready to go. The patient had in the meantime  
19 stabilized but hadn't gotten demonstrably better. We  
20 had been seeing over the previous four to five weeks  
21 kind of each day things were gradually worse. In the  
22 two days between the administration of the  
23 intracavitary phage and the time the Navy phage were  
24 ready, there were no changes in his clinical status.  
25 Whether or not it was causal or just happenstance,

1 hard to know, but we still felt that we were not where  
2 we needed to be in terms of getting him better, and we  
3 knew that we had isolated *Acinetobacter* from his  
4 peritoneal cavity, which would be outside the field of  
5 the phage being introduced into the abscessed  
6 cavities. Every sputum that we obtained was full of  
7 *Acinetobacter*. *Acinetobacter* had been isolated from  
8 his urine and from time to time later on from his  
9 bloodstream. So we felt that if we were going to make  
10 any headway that we needed to switch to a parenteral  
11 administration approach and decided to give the Navy  
12 phage cocktail intravenously.

13 This is the ID fellow, Melanie McCauley,  
14 giving the first dose intravenously. He tolerated  
15 both phage administration routes quite well. He  
16 gradually saw fewer and fewer pressors over the course  
17 of the next 24 hours. Got gradually better, and then  
18 on Sunday evening actually woke up and recognized his  
19 daughter, who was sitting by the bedside.

20 At that point, we found that the  
21 *Acinetobacter* was now sensitive to minocycline. That  
22 was added to have maximal benefit from antibiotics as  
23 well. But Sunday morning things got worse again, and  
24 he again began to require pressors. His mental status  
25 declined and by 8 in the morning he was on three

1 pressors and unarousable again.

2 I was very concerned we'd done something  
3 with the phage. We stopped the phage therapy,  
4 cultured the bags to make sure that there were no  
5 bacterial contaminations, but also aware that he was  
6 someone who could certainly have intervening  
7 complications of being on the assay use, so we  
8 broadened his antibiotics and lo and behold found that  
9 he was now -- the next day he was growing anaerobic  
10 gram negative rods from his blood, probably again from  
11 his necrotic pancreatic bed, turned out to be a  
12 *Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron*.

13 He got better by Monday night, but again  
14 Tuesday morning he was in shock, requiring three  
15 pressors. This time he was noted to be in atrial  
16 fibrillation. The pulmonary attendings and fellows  
17 were sure it was the phage therapy again, and when we  
18 looked more carefully and it was found that he was in  
19 atrial fibrillation, I said did he -- I asked them  
20 whether he had become hypotensive before or after the  
21 atrial fibrillation. They said it was after. I said  
22 why don't you correct his rhythm and I bet you'll find  
23 that his blood pressure improves, and it turned out he  
24 got much better and it was really because they had  
25 diuresed him and had potassium depleted him that he

1 had flipped into atrial fibrillation.

2 The only reason I'm getting into this is  
3 that patients like this have multiple complications  
4 that always get blamed on the new therapeutic, and  
5 that's what was going on throughout this first week of  
6 therapy.

7 Here he was by that evening, the next  
8 evening awake and interacting again with his family.  
9 He began to grow *Acinetobacter* less frequently, but we  
10 didn't have really good quantitative cultures, over  
11 the course of the next several days developed phage-  
12 resistant *Acinetobacter* that you'll hear about  
13 tomorrow from Dr. Biswas. We did some phage PK to  
14 give a sense of how this is just phage being given  
15 intravenously at time zero and then monitored in his  
16 bloodstream you can see cleared by 60 minutes.

17 His course after that was relatively  
18 chaotic. He was a sick guy. He had another bout of  
19 *Acinetobacter* sepsis associated with the drain that  
20 was in his biliary tree, migrating into his liver, but  
21 he gradually got better and was discharged in August.

22 Here he is leaving Las Vegas, and here he is  
23 in May just before returning to work with his wife,  
24 Steffanie Strathdee, both big fans of phage at this  
25 point in their homes. I'm sorry they can't be with us

1 today. It would be much more fun to have had them  
2 present this case than me.

3 So lessons learned. It's feasible to  
4 develop a strain-specific bacteriophage cocktail if  
5 you have two academic groups turn over everything  
6 they're doing for several months for a single patient.  
7 The therapy was well tolerated and I'm convinced  
8 really turned his course around given where he'd been  
9 going over the course of that period of time, and that  
10 people like this seem to be very complicated to both  
11 treat and assess in the context of eIND therapy.

12 So, to finish, the strengths of eIND  
13 therapy, you benefit patients individually.  
14 Certainly, Dr. Patterson was benefitted by this  
15 therapy as far as I could tell as his physician. The  
16 eIND is very flexible. You can treat many different  
17 kinds of patients if they require therapy based on  
18 eIND considerations. And from the regulatory  
19 perspective, it's relatively straightforward.

20 The weaknesses are, however, that every  
21 patient's different and it's very hard to aggregate  
22 patients and make sense of the data you collect  
23 prospectively. Every time you do this at a new place  
24 it's very complicated. The nurses were sure we were  
25 going to kill him with the phage. The pharmacy was

1 sure that we were going to contaminate the pharmacy.  
2 The Institutional Biosafety Committee had my name on a  
3 list for a while, and I had been the previous chair of  
4 that committee. And the other issue is that none of  
5 the regimens are going to be standardized if you're  
6 treating one patient at a time.

7           You don't collect the data in a standard  
8 way. You don't have standardized end points, and it's  
9 not sustainable. You can't have academic laboratories  
10 doing this over and over again, and we had no  
11 resources to do this. We were shipping things back  
12 and forth using personal accounts. So there needs to  
13 be a more sustainable way to approach this.

14           So I'll stop there. We'll talk about more  
15 of this, I hope, on the panel and just say this was  
16 really a village that did this. Multiple people  
17 engaged in the laboratories that were making the  
18 phage. Scott Salka at AmpliPhi made the phage  
19 available. Quickly needed advice from Dr. Merrill was  
20 extremely helpful in terms of the overall therapeutic  
21 approach. We were very fortunate to have the help of  
22 the FDA in approaching this. We had helpful lawyers,  
23 which is like an oxymoron sometimes, and very helpful  
24 people in our administration, which is also an  
25 oxymoron, and finally, a bunch of extremely

1 enthusiastic physicians that made all of the  
2 difference and allowed this to go forward. So thanks  
3 very much.

4 (Applause.)

5 DR. KINCAID: That's an impressive number of  
6 stars that were aligned at the right time for that  
7 gentleman. A very interesting story.

8 I think what we'll do now is we'll go on to  
9 Dr. Narayan from Yale University, who will provide  
10 another example of treatment under eIND, which is  
11 obviously an important tool available under such  
12 desperate conditions.

13 Did you have something, Marcus, for me?  
14 Okay.

15 All right. At any rate, I'd like to  
16 introduce Dr. Deepak Narayan from Yale University,  
17 School of Medicine, and he'll give us an overview of  
18 another case, quite a different case involving a  
19 *Pseudomonas* infection. Deepak.

20 DR. NARAYAN: Good morning, everyone.  
21 Before I get started, I'd like to thank a whole host  
22 of people who have enabled me to be here. Randy,  
23 Roger, and most importantly Peter Marks, whose  
24 connection with Yale enabled me to move things along,  
25 as you will see.

1           So just a brief description of my talk.  
2           This is not going to be laden with scientific data, as  
3           Dr. Gôrski's was. It is a mixture of an apology for  
4           surgeons, some clinical storytelling, and some history  
5           which I think you'll find interesting.

6           So, as someone pointed out, paraphrasing  
7           Halliday, God must have really loved viruses because  
8           they are the most numerous replicating entities on  
9           this earth. The phage structure that we all learned  
10          in high school pretty much holds true now, and this is  
11          my first contact with phages when I learned about  
12          Twort and d'Herelle when I was in the 11th grade.

13          Coming from India as I do, I have personal  
14          experience with phage generation from the Ganges where  
15          you see sights like these where people drink directly  
16          out of the Ganges and never seem to suffer any ill  
17          effects, but it is when we drink water from New Haven,  
18          we seem to work up a huge host of gastroenteritis  
19          regardless of what else we do.

20          So the funny thing was that Hankin reported  
21          that a substance in the Ganges River prevented cholera  
22          and this was remarked upon by a fellow in New England  
23          named Mark Twain in his *Tramps Abroad* book. But the  
24          real hero of all this, as has been pointed out  
25          multiple times this morning, is d'Herelle, who was

1 also the model for *Arrowsmith* by Sinclair Lewis, and  
2 interestingly was brought to New Haven by Dean  
3 Winternitz, which was pointed out by an earlier  
4 speaker, and owing to sharp practices that Gunther  
5 Stent wrote about in his review of Bill Summer's  
6 biography was asked to leave.

7           The most interesting coincidence, in fact,  
8 this whole episode has been a list of multiple  
9 coincidences, sort of like Swiss cheese holes lining  
10 up, but in a good sort of a way. His office was right  
11 next to mine when it was created about 100 years ago.  
12 He didn't really do too well at New Haven, probably  
13 drank the same tap water that I did, malaria --  
14 phrenic nerve palsy and sort of moved on to France.

15           So the big issue is why am I as a plastic  
16 surgeon talking about all this stuff, and what might  
17 not be admittedly obvious is that we deal with a whole  
18 host of infectious problems, including necrotizing  
19 fasciitis, abscesses in the head and neck, infected  
20 craniotomy plates and so forth, as well as dealing  
21 with infected prostheses on a fairly regular basis.  
22 This is an example, and I apologize for the goriness  
23 of the pictures. You cannot have a surgeon talk  
24 without gory pictures.

25           For instance, this case of an infected

1 prosthesis which was referred from a local hospital.  
2 As you can see, a fairly large volume of foreign  
3 material, open wound ring, pus, and a standard  
4 treatment for this is to wash it out a few times, move  
5 what's called a muscle flap, in this case a  
6 gastrocnemius muscle, close it, and with a full  
7 expectation that it will heal, which it does most of  
8 the time.

9 We have other problems that we deal with,  
10 sort of more appropriate to the case that we're  
11 discussing. This is a veteran who presented with  
12 basically pus around the Dacron graft, an aortic valve  
13 replacement going all the way down, and this whole  
14 thing smelled like a sewer, and for a few days we were  
15 concerned that he had a colonic fistula.

16 Again, the treatment is to wash it out  
17 repeatedly, make sure you get good by-fill control,  
18 flip the pectoralis major muscle into the wound, close  
19 it using a wound vac, especially because it's  
20 infected, and then have him present with a well-healed  
21 wound approximately two months after the procedure.

22 And one final note. Another area where  
23 Dacron grafts are often used, vascular bypass grafts  
24 for lower extremity ischemia, and in this picture you  
25 see the graft right about there. That little line is

1 to show the radiograph is where the graft actually is,  
2 and the groin is probably the most commonly  
3 contaminated site of vascular graft infections.

4 So the treatment, once again, as with the  
5 chest, is to wash it out, get as much control locally  
6 as you can, and flip a nearby muscle in order to  
7 deliver antibiotics appropriately, with the antibiotic  
8 regimen continuing for about six weeks after the  
9 procedure.

10 We discussed these traditional approaches  
11 approximately 10 years ago now, and the reason for  
12 doing that is, again, because of the aging population  
13 we're beginning to see a greater number of these  
14 patients presenting with graft infections, and for the  
15 most part, and I want to emphasize this, is that we  
16 don't really need to resort to out-of-the-box  
17 thinking, such as phage therapy, in terms of  
18 treatment.

19 In fact, over the years, over the last 15  
20 years we've dealt with approximately 150 graft  
21 infections, only one has been lost because of an  
22 infection with *Pseudomonas* as a matter of fact of the  
23 anastomotic site.

24 As you all know, there's a dramatic decrease  
25 in antibiotic drug approvals, an increase in

1 antibiotic resistance, and I will not belabor the  
2 issue, and despite encouraging slogans such as "Bad  
3 bugs need new drugs," really not much has been  
4 forthcoming.

5 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is of particular  
6 interest to surgeons because it's responsible for a  
7 significant number of nosocomial pneumonias, burn,  
8 wound infections, which is of particular relevance to  
9 plastic surgeons, as well as other immunocompromised  
10 populations, as you know. And this is a really clever  
11 bug which has evolved multiple mechanisms by which to  
12 thwart the efforts of surgeons and ID specialists and  
13 most importantly has been associated with the  
14 formation of biofilm, especially with prosthetic  
15 material.

16 Now there are a whole host of mechanisms by  
17 which *Pseudomonas* survives, which I will, again, not  
18 belabor this crowd with, and a partial list of the  
19 drugs effluxed by the -- multiple drug efflux  
20 mechanisms are listed here for you to see.

21 So the story again begins as another  
22 coincidence whereby I was contacted by Dr. Paul Turner  
23 and his post-doc, Benjamin Chan, to set up a treatment  
24 for diabetic wound infections, and part of this  
25 discussion centered around the isolation of a new

1 phage, the OMK01, which has been written about, which  
2 is the outer membrane polar knockout one, and this was  
3 isolated funnily enough from Dodge Pond in  
4 Connecticut, a site of Navy testing and apparently so  
5 toxic that none of the residents eat the fish from  
6 this pond anymore, and this is from a direct quote  
7 from a patient.

8           So the phage therapy approach, as you all  
9 know, can mimic the use of antibiotics. You treat it  
10 with a phage. You kill as many as you can.  
11 Resistance to phage is developed, and essentially what  
12 ends up happening is that you basically cannot use the  
13 phage to treat them anymore.

14           So these resistance-targeting antibiotics,  
15 which are basically a combination of these two, might  
16 actually help to deal with this problem. So the  
17 amazing thing about this OMK01 was that it actually  
18 latched on to the drug efflux pumps. And so the  
19 thought was that maybe we can use evolution to help  
20 us, and I want to emphasize that all this was done in  
21 Paul Turner's and Ben Chan's lab, and they were kind  
22 enough to lend me these slides.

23           So the thought was that if the resistant  
24 organism was forced to make a choice between  
25 resistance to antibiotics and resistance to phage, it

1 would lose because it was so closely intertwined that  
2 it could only be resistant to one, and, in fact, an *in*  
3 *vitro* test did demonstrate that this actually  
4 happened.

5 So I'm just going to briefly talk to you  
6 about the patient in question. This was a 75-year-old  
7 male, had a coronary artery bypass graft, was done in  
8 a neighboring hospital, along with an aortic arch  
9 replacement, similar to the picture that I showed you  
10 in the infected thoracic cavity.

11 Following surgery, he developed empyema and  
12 became extremely sick, requiring four pressors, at  
13 which point he was transferred over to Yale-New Haven  
14 Hospital. My boss happened to be on call, and he was  
15 leaving town, and so being the most junior on the  
16 totem pole, I was given the enviable task of taking  
17 care of this gentleman who -- which is now a matter of  
18 public record -- who was a faculty member and thereby  
19 obviously raised the strain involved in treating him.

20 So the patient was placed on antibiotics  
21 appropriately since he grew *Pseudomonas*, as depicted  
22 in these green shadows that you see on the cartoon  
23 here. So, after -- and I'm going to try to see if  
24 this actually works -- washing him a few times, you  
25 end up with this sort of a scenario where you have a

1 pus pocket, and I'm sorry if you can't see this back  
2 here, sort of the heart of the matter, if you will,  
3 which was the cause of the problems, as we'll talk  
4 about it. You can actually see the greenish block.

5 And so, again, in keeping with the previous  
6 treatment, keep washing him out as many times as we  
7 could. In this case, we did it about three times, and  
8 then used a muscle flap to close it. So, as a part of  
9 increasing the immune delivery in this area, we  
10 harvested the omentum through a laparoscope, which is  
11 the yellow plat-like substance that you see here, and  
12 during the course of this harvest we found that the  
13 field was filling up with blood, and, to my absolute  
14 horror, found out that he had actually ruptured his  
15 ventricle on the table, which, of course, prompted a  
16 repair with the help of the cardiothoracic surgeons,  
17 which you see out here. We used a piece of lung to  
18 patch that defect, and fortunately for all of us he  
19 survived.

20 So, despite actually having been discharged  
21 from the hospital, he was admitted at least four times  
22 for episodes of sepsis requiring IV antibiotics. He  
23 was placed on ciprofloxacin as a suppressive measure.  
24 He did present with one episode of bleeding which I  
25 thought was from the outer -- it turned out it was

1 just a rib poking through an intercostal artery, which  
2 we cleaned up.

3 He was then asked to follow up and multiple  
4 requests from his son, who had a Ph.D. from Yale in  
5 immunology, urged me to find other places to treat  
6 this gentleman. Again, as Dr. Schooley pointed out,  
7 cardiothoracic surgeons refused to operate on him,  
8 saying that he was doing well and should be left  
9 alone. We contacted surgeons in Tokyo, Zurich, as  
10 well as in Texas, asking if this aortic arch could be  
11 replaced, and all of them basically declined to  
12 operate.

13 His son, who was pushing for experimental  
14 treatment, you know, suggested new antibiotics, and  
15 during the course of this whole business, I met with  
16 Drs. Paul Turner and Chan, who, as I said, presented a  
17 project for treatment of chronic wounds, and a few  
18 days after the meeting I realized that this gentleman  
19 is a perfect treatment choice for phages.

20 We organized an eIND, and thanks to Peter  
21 Marks and Cara Fiore, who were extremely helpful in  
22 moving this along, we did get initial permission to  
23 proceed, but the patient was lost to follow up since  
24 he left the country and was not heard of until January  
25 of 2016. Apparently, by report, had been getting

1 intravenous ceftazidime as the patient could afford  
2 it, for over a year and a half intravenously.

3           So, when they presented again, this was due  
4 to bleeding from a fistula site that had never healed,  
5 and the *Pseudomonas* that was repeatedly cultured from  
6 this obviously was a potential source of a problem.  
7 And so the FDA obviously gave us permission to  
8 proceed. And one of the happiest emails that I ever  
9 received in my life was that I did not need to go  
10 through the HIC for approval.

11           So, when I sent this to the HIC and they  
12 promptly approved it, we decided to go ahead and treat  
13 this gentleman, and a whole host of bacteriophages  
14 were tested by Drs. Turner and Chan, and we created a  
15 three-phage cocktail. The endotoxin business was also  
16 of concern, but we had it independently verified by a  
17 laboratory in Cape Cod to meet EU standards. So the  
18 thought was that potentially we could use three of  
19 these phages, one to weaken the biofilm, one to  
20 potentially remove the colonists, and then use  
21 ceftazidime to finish the job off.

22           So, as it turns out, we ended up using just  
23 the OMK01, and with the help of our interventional  
24 radiologist, Dr. Mojibian, we accessed -- tried to  
25 access the abscessed cavity, which you'll see the

1 needle trying to go into that space that I showed you  
2 on the video.

3 Now, in a further twist to the whole thing,  
4 the day we were doing this when we organized the OR,  
5 the emergency and anesthesia teams, the interventional  
6 radiologist, who is from Iran, received a call from  
7 his wife urging him not to do the procedure. As it  
8 turns out, the patient in question was a legend in  
9 Persian medicine, Iranian medicine, if you will, and  
10 the thought -- the wife was worried that they would  
11 not be able to go back to Iran if something happened  
12 to the gentleman on the table.

13 So there was a hasty discussion about all  
14 this prior to the injection, but thanks to the  
15 fortitude of Dr. Mojibian, we decided to proceed.  
16 Despite that, trying to access this for over an hour,  
17 we were able to inject just a few milliliters of  
18 solution, so we decided instead to actually push the  
19 phages in through the fistula site, seal it off, and  
20 let the patient be.

21 So the patient was sealed off with this  
22 thing in place for over 48 hours, and he immediately  
23 left town to go back to his home country. It turns  
24 out that six weeks later he suffered a perforation of  
25 the aortic arch from a bony spicule which resulted

1 from a re-growth of the bone from the debridement that  
2 we'd done earlier. So the graft was partially  
3 replaced by surgeons in Iran, and the cultures just  
4 revealed *Candida*, not *Pseudomonas*. He was treated for  
5 the *Candida* and has been free of all antibiotics now  
6 for about 15 months.

7 So, in conclusion, obviously, this case with  
8 an N of 1 is hardly the basis of treatment of all  
9 vascular graft infection, but the important thing I  
10 want to point out is that there are conventional  
11 methods of treating these infections, as I mentioned  
12 earlier, over 150 infections treated fairly  
13 successfully, with the exception of one who burst his  
14 graft due to *Pseudomonas* infection, and the scope of  
15 phage treatment for these highly resistant infections  
16 remains to be explored. Thank you.

17 (Applause.)

18 DR. KINCAID: I think so that we can move  
19 more quickly to the panel discussion we will have an  
20 opportunity for Dr. Narayan, Dr. Schooley, and others  
21 to field a few questions at the beginning of the panel  
22 discussion.

23 At this point, I'd like to invite Dr. Gabard  
24 to the podium. This project that he is responsible  
25 for directing is a noteworthy project in the history

1 of phage therapy because it is a randomized multi-  
2 center clinical trial and, as we'll probably learn,  
3 not without its challenges. So I think this is a very  
4 important step going forward as it lays the foundation  
5 for a more rational data-based approach towards using  
6 phage for medical interventions. Dr. Gabard.

7 DR. GABARD: Good morning, everybody. Thank  
8 you for the organizers for inviting me to talk about  
9 what we do at Pherecydes Pharma. Of course, this is  
10 the usual statement.

11 So, first, I'd like to introduce my talk by  
12 explaining what we have been doing in the company for  
13 several years, the different types of approach we have  
14 been using for phage therapy. So the first thing you  
15 probably heard quite a lot about is the Phagoburn  
16 project. Actually, we entered phage therapy by  
17 starting through the standard regulatory routes with a  
18 fixed product like an antibiotic, and actually we were  
19 testing two products, each of them with more than 10  
20 phages, so we call that complex product, and they were  
21 really specific to either *E. coli* or *Pseudomonas*  
22 *aeruginosa*.

23 Then the second category of products we have  
24 been developing are two other cocktails, and I'm just  
25 giving you the example of one of them, which are much

1 smaller. I guess the experience of handling the  
2 manufacturing of products with more than 10 phages has  
3 been a good experience, and we decided to go with  
4 smaller cocktails of four phages.

5 Very recently I show some data that probably  
6 we have not been showing yet. We have been also  
7 involved in two compassionate treatments with tailored  
8 products.

9 So, regarding the product of the Phagoburn  
10 study, from the point of view of the regulatory route,  
11 it was considered as a frozen cocktail with no  
12 possibilities of evolution, so of changing the phages  
13 within the product and, of course, it was quite  
14 unmanageable to be able to adapt the phage of that  
15 product with so many phages in the composition.

16 It's important to understand also what this  
17 definition is about of an active pharmaceutical  
18 ingredient and a drug product. If I take the example  
19 of an antibiotic, an antibiotic has usually a single  
20 API. Here, we are talking about drug products that  
21 were made of 12 and 13 API, which is a very, very big  
22 challenge on the manufacturing side and the regulatory  
23 side.

24 So that has been a challenge and we have had  
25 some issues regarding shelf life of the managing of

1 the APIs in the drug product. When you do GMP  
2 manufacturing for any types of products, you are  
3 supposed to provide the guarantee that your active  
4 ingredients are stable over time. We have not been  
5 capable of finding ways, technical ways to demonstrate  
6 that each active was being always at the same  
7 concentration within the product's shelf life.

8 We have been capable of doing that, of  
9 course, for each individual phage, but not for the  
10 phage inside the drug product, and if anybody in this  
11 room has a way to do that, has a technical solution to  
12 do that in the complex product of 10 phages, I would  
13 be happy to learn from that person.

14 Of course, when we started the first  
15 process, we heard about the endotoxin content. Our  
16 first manufacturing process was too high in  
17 endotoxins. We were not in the range of 45,000, but  
18 in the range of probably 30,000, and in order to be  
19 able to use that product in the patients, we had to go  
20 through a dilution, a dilution at the point of care so  
21 that the clinicians were doing a 1,000 full dilution  
22 before to use the treatment.

23 Now, if we move to the second category of  
24 cocktails we have been developing, I have been  
25 mentioning two of those here. The first one falls

1       against *Staphylococcus aureus*, and the second one is  
2       against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Here, we have really  
3       severely reduced the number of phages, trying to  
4       isolate phages with broader spectrum of activity in  
5       order to have less APIs because, on the CMC point of  
6       view, on the manufacturing point of view, it makes  
7       your life much, much easier.

8               Of course, with such a low number of  
9       bacteriophages, evolution is possible, but under which  
10      registration frame, and I think this is very important  
11      that we address that issue during this workshop. If  
12      you want to make an evolution of a phage in a product,  
13      what is the status of that new phage? This is  
14      important.

15             And then, of course, we have been working a  
16      lot on improving the endotoxin content, the  
17      purification of the products, the GMP process overall,  
18      and now we can say that development of toxins we have  
19      is at about two in units in a range and that we have  
20      improved the yield through a new purification by a  
21      factor of 10 to 100 according to each phage. So we  
22      usually routinely yield phages at about 10 to the  
23      11th, 10 to the 12th pfu per milliliter in the GMP  
24      process.

25             Now, if we move to the next very recent

1 change in the treatment approach, we have been doing  
2 very recently, early 2017, two treatments that I will  
3 detail a bit more after that, using product prepared,  
4 really tailored for the patient. For that product,  
5 the goal would be to use GMP products, but I will  
6 explain that we didn't have any GMP phages. We had  
7 GMP-like phages, and after discussion with the  
8 pharmacists from the hospitals, as well as the  
9 clinicians, we got the authorization to apply these  
10 products.

11 Of course, here, we are not talking about  
12 product evolution because, by essence, you are doing a  
13 diagnostic and you are just delivering the phages that  
14 are active against the infection. But then the  
15 regulatory status of these products is really  
16 something that we need to address during this  
17 workshop.

18 If you use no GMP phages like we have been  
19 doing but produced like GMP phages, we enter more or  
20 less in what we call in Europe or in France the  
21 magisterial formula, which is usually done in the  
22 pharmacy hospital. Then, of course, if you do GMP  
23 phage for single patients, it requires a regulatory  
24 frame, and what kind of regulatory frame can we use  
25 for that? I think this is the type of questions we

1 need to address.

2           So a few words on Phagoburn, you're going to  
3 be disappointed because I'm not going to deliver the  
4 data today. I'm going to provide some preliminary  
5 information. You know that the study was performed in  
6 11 burn units across Europe. Actually, only six of  
7 them recruited patients, so it was a challenge, and I  
8 have been listing the most -- the major recruiters, of  
9 course, is the Percy hospital close to Paris, the  
10 military hospital, and the Queen Astrid Military  
11 Hospital in Belgium. We were talking about Jean-Paul  
12 Pirnay in a previous presentation, who is coming from  
13 that hospital. So they were the biggest recruiters in  
14 the study.

15           The time frame of the trial, of the project  
16 is explained above, and I think we were very much too  
17 optimistic, especially on the CMC manufacturing. We  
18 thought we would do GMP phages within 12 months, and  
19 we ended up doing GMP phages within 24 months, and you  
20 see that the results -- I cannot show -- I cannot talk  
21 about the data because, as you can see, the consortium  
22 met about 10 days ago and the preliminary clinical  
23 data have been shown for the first time to the  
24 consortium only 10 days ago. We have not time, we did  
25 not have time yet to review all the data and to

1 analyze all the -- especially the biological data. So  
2 we expect to publish all this probably before the end  
3 of the year. But anyway, you have some issues, as we  
4 have been getting through this clinical trial, and I  
5 can give some information about what we see.

6 When we started to do the study, we were  
7 doing two cocktails, one against *E. coli*, the other  
8 one against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and the  
9 epidemiological infection data that we got from all  
10 the hospitals were in a way not realistic, and we know  
11 that only today.

12 Why was that not realistic? Because when we  
13 check in detail the epidemiological data for, let's  
14 say, checking how many *E. coli* cases the hospitals  
15 got, actually, they usually count an *E. coli* infection  
16 as a case when the *E. coli* infection is the major bug  
17 that the patient got. But in most of these cases  
18 actually the patients gets poly-infections.

19 So you're going to get data that says that  
20 is a patient that has an *E. coli* infection, but it  
21 doesn't tell you that on top of that the patient also  
22 had *Klebsiella* or maybe a *Staphylococcus aureus* at the  
23 level of the colonization, but when you have a product  
24 which is mono-specific, when it comes to the time to  
25 deliver treatment, you cannot include that patient

1 because it's not a mono-infection. So be very, very  
2 careful if you do start clinical studies with phage  
3 with monovalent product to really check the value of  
4 the epidemiological data, so which ended up for us  
5 adding only one patient included with the product  
6 against *E. coli*, which is called PP0121, and we  
7 decided last January to stop the arms of the study  
8 with that product. So all the data we are generating  
9 now and that we are analyzing today at this moment are  
10 really for the patients that have been treated with a  
11 cocktail against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* only.

12 Of course, one other thing you need to  
13 understand is that it's the same case, by the way, for  
14 the compassionate use treatments with the type of  
15 patients we have been handling. We are talking about  
16 people that are severely burned. Some of them were  
17 burned up to 90 percent of their skin surface. In the  
18 red, it was probably in the range of 20 to 30 percent  
19 deep burn, infected deep burns. It's impossible to  
20 avoid using antibiotics. It's simply impossible. The  
21 ethic committees would not agree anything about that.

22 So you really have to think very early in  
23 your clinical process in your stratification that  
24 you're going to have to analyze against antibiotic,  
25 and not only against the antibiotic that might be

1 prescribed before you even include the patient because  
2 this is the case. The guy who was going to be treated  
3 may already be under antibiotics because of a  
4 respiratory tract infection.

5 You have also to stratify on the fact that  
6 these patients may get this respiratory tract  
7 infections when he is being treated by the local  
8 treatment, during the course of the treatment, and  
9 that makes your stratification even more complex.

10 Okay. Of course, the severity of the  
11 patients of the cases. When we started the trial, we  
12 didn't get too much in consideration and we had data  
13 safety monitoring board, an independent data safety  
14 monitoring board which was reviewing the ethical  
15 treatment of the patients during all the clinical  
16 trial. And after they met the first time, they said  
17 that we should really check the severity of the  
18 patient before deciding to recruit or not -- include  
19 this patient into the trial, and we decided to  
20 implement something which is called the SOFA test,  
21 which is some kind of a monitoring process that checks  
22 how bad the patient is, in which situation it is, and  
23 if he is really in a very bad situation, then the rule  
24 was not to include the patient because the chances  
25 that the patient die anyway are so high that you would

1 not be able to generate any data.

2           And then, on top of that, when we reviewed  
3 all the literature about the primary end points that  
4 have been tested for checking antibiotics, I'm not  
5 sure that primary end points that have been tailored  
6 for antibiotic checkings are exactly the same for  
7 phages because these primary end points have been set  
8 up for fixed molecules, and here we are talking about  
9 living organism, so that's also something we'll  
10 discuss when we show the data.

11           Okay. So here I'm going to switch now to  
12 the two patient cases we got early this year. First  
13 of all, maybe a few things about the regulatory status  
14 in France. With the Phagoburn studies, there was a  
15 special committee who met last year organized by the  
16 French regulatory agency. It's called a CSST, and  
17 this special committee agreed that the phages from our  
18 Phagoburn study can be provided to the patients for  
19 treating them.

20           So there is a possibility in France to now  
21 treat patients with GMP-produced phages from our  
22 company, and these treatments are only reserved to  
23 patients that are either critically ill, they may die  
24 from the infections, or that patients that have a  
25 functional risk of losing let's say one hand, one

1 foot, something like that. So really serious cases.

2           Unfortunately, we didn't have any more  
3 stocks of these products in the company and we ended  
4 up having the request from the hospital. I mean, we  
5 have requests all the time, but serious requests from  
6 the Center of Reference on *Staphylococcus aureus*  
7 infections in France, which is based in Lyon. And  
8 they asked us very recently, in February, if we could  
9 provide bacteriophages to treat one of their patients.  
10 And in that case, we didn't have any GMP product left.

11           So we talked with the agency and we said we  
12 can provide GMP-like products, and when I say "GMP-  
13 like," I mean they are really produced exactly the  
14 same way. There is not all the paperwork for the GMP,  
15 but all the quality control tests are exactly the  
16 same. And we said we can provide this. Is that  
17 acceptable to the French agency?

18           And the French agency said, I think this is  
19 not our responsibility because we are not anymore in  
20 the GMP stages. This is the responsibility of the  
21 pharmacist and the clinicians to agree or not, and  
22 especially the pharmacists to agree or not about the  
23 quality of the products you can provide. And the  
24 pharmacists providing the data we provided said that  
25 it was fine, that we could do the treatment, but I

1 must insist that these products were not GMP. They  
2 were GMP-like, and the process is really for us now  
3 that we have been experimenting that a couple of times  
4 the clinician makes a request that goes to the  
5 regulatory agency. It takes about a few hours.

6 Their agency asks us if we want to do the  
7 treatment. If we say yes, we just ask in a rush  
8 process to receive the strain, which is about half a  
9 day to get it in the lab. We do preliminary  
10 screening. We check what phages are available in our  
11 collection that are active against the strain, and  
12 then we send back those bacteriophages, which  
13 basically it take about 48 hours, and then we have to  
14 provide all the data, quality data that we have  
15 already for the phage in collections, and then we can  
16 provide the phages. Let's say in less than a week the  
17 treatment can start.

18 Here are the data. So this is the first  
19 patient which was the one probably to help us to set  
20 up the process with the hospital and the agency. In  
21 that phage, we got no more phage of the GMP produced  
22 through the Phagoburn project, so we used some phages  
23 that we have against respiratory tract infections,  
24 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* respiratory tract infections in  
25 the normal phage project, and you see the efficacy of

1 the phages here, without treatment here, and the four  
2 phages here, or three phages, and this is the product,  
3 and we send the product not prepared in a cocktail but  
4 independently.

5 Then we check for the titer, which was in  
6 that old fixed -- they were higher in titer, but we  
7 put the titer exactly the same for each phage, so we  
8 dropped it from 10 to the 12th to 10 to the 10. Of  
9 course, for these phages, because they were in  
10 collection, they were fully sequenced, fully analyzed,  
11 the genome was fully characterized, and we know they  
12 were confirmed by sequence analysis without any  
13 lysogenic behavior. They were checked for sterility,  
14 pH, and contaminant, and as I said, contaminant  
15 endotoxin content was about two units of enzyme per  
16 whatever you need. The host cell DNA was undetectable  
17 and the host cell proteins were below 20 microgram per  
18 milliliter.

19 And this is the case that I'm talking about.  
20 This is a man who got cancer and had to have cement  
21 put into -- to replace -- how do you say that in  
22 English? Metastasize, is that correct? Yeah. Bone  
23 metastasize, it was removed, replaced by a cement, and  
24 the cement ended up bringing *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*  
25 infection, which was total resistant except a little

1 bit to colistin. It was still a little bit sensitive  
2 to colistin.

3 So we got the approval for sending the  
4 product, I think it was on a Tuesday. They did the  
5 treatment on a Wednesday, and we decided to go for  
6 four applications because, in that case, the wound was  
7 still accessible during several days and we decided to  
8 go for four treatments of four phages each time.

9 So they applied the treatment on the Friday.  
10 They did the first wound sampling because we have been  
11 doing monitoring in the wounds to see if we were  
12 getting any resistant. So they did the sampling after  
13 the first application. It was a Monday. We got the  
14 data on the Tuesday, and the Tuesday itself after the  
15 first application the wound was sterile.

16 So we still maintained the three other  
17 treatments and the patient was cured and saved, except  
18 that a few weeks later, a few months later he died  
19 from his cancer because he has a general cancer. So  
20 that was a success, but, I mean, you save the -- the  
21 guy die from not being infected anymore, which is a  
22 partial success I should say.

23 So this is the type of things that we have  
24 been doing. I will not explain too much. The  
25 debridement, the administration of the phage. I think

1 it was about 20 milliliters in the wound, and then you  
2 see what's happening after that.

3 And this one has not been described yet  
4 because it's more recent. In that case, it was  
5 interesting because it was contamination where we had  
6 to prepare two mix of phages against two bacterial  
7 species, so it was not a mono-specific product, it was  
8 a product against two species, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*  
9 and *Staphylococcus aureus*, and you see this lady had a  
10 serious infection where you can see what's happening,  
11 and here in the infection we were detecting  
12 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Staphylococcus aureus* just  
13 a few days before the administration of the product.

14 So this is what the patient has been  
15 receiving. It was three phages against each bacterial  
16 strain and they were mixed just before the use at the  
17 hospital facility by the pharmacist under a laminar  
18 sterile hood.

19 Well, the conclusion of all that is that  
20 today she has been treated for about three months now,  
21 and she is fine. We still have recently got the  
22 information that she has a *Staphylococcus lugdunensis*  
23 available, so we are going to check if the phages we  
24 have is efficient against that bacteria, but she's in  
25 good shape.

1           Okay. Maybe to expand on the discussion  
2 this afternoon, here I have been choosing a process  
3 that we have been through the company from standard  
4 fixed cocktail to precise precision medicine to just a  
5 little bit challenge the regulatory environment.

6           If we talk about the complex cocktail or  
7 cocktail which is described as an antibiotic, the  
8 regulatory frame is available and is ready for you to  
9 go through a standard process of market authorization.

10           But if we go to tailored preparation, you  
11 have seen that this type of magisterial preparation  
12 does not go, at least in Europe, through a market  
13 authorization or a registration process. It's an  
14 individual treatment for an individual person.

15           If we end up going for these types of  
16 personalized treatments, there is no real framework  
17 for approving that type of treatment. So I have been  
18 putting in that arrow the personalized drug product  
19 with viable evolutive phages that should be GMP  
20 produced under which type of registration, and I have  
21 been showing some examples that we are going to face  
22 in the future.

23           If you take the, for instance, the target  
24 bacteria A, which could be *E. coli*, you have a bank of  
25 bacteria phages, and the patients, you do a diagnostic

1 because we believe too that the preliminary diagnostic  
2 is essential and it's going to be something that is  
3 going to be requested anyway by all the antibiotic-  
4 resistant plan that all requests, without any  
5 exception, to do a preliminary diagnostic before  
6 applying the antibiotic. So it's going to be the same  
7 for the phages.

8           So the patient might have one bacterial  
9 species and you do a treatment with three  
10 bacteriophages, and another patient, which is more or  
11 less the case, the second case I was describing, has  
12 two -- here, I'm talking about three bacterial  
13 infections and you're providing phages against two or  
14 three bacterial infections.

15           And the third case is that patient number  
16 three which has maybe one bacterial infection which is  
17 being treated by a first treatment, but that treatment  
18 is not efficient enough and you have to go back with a  
19 variant of the phage you have been using for preparing  
20 the first treatment, and what is the status of that  
21 variant?

22           So I think the questions we need to really  
23 address today are more or less described into this  
24 slide. There is no process today, if we have let's  
25 say develop a data package, for getting the

1 authorization to treat the patient with a certain  
2 number of phages, and you generate new phages that  
3 could be either variant phages or that could be new-  
4 found phages into a sewage system but belonging to the  
5 same category, what kind of data package are we going  
6 to provide against these phages?

7           So there is the authority to say that we  
8 could start from a homologous group saying that you  
9 have some kind of a group which is representative of  
10 the phage family and that that needs to be fully  
11 characterized, but the new phages that belong to that  
12 group can get a short data package without all the  
13 treatments, testing pre-clinical studies in animals  
14 and all these things, and be eligible to get into  
15 manufacturing, or the same for the -- now, if we talk  
16 about the bacteria, the manufacturing process, there  
17 are ideas to go for validation of a manufacturing  
18 process that would be eligible to any phage being  
19 produced, but would that be the case for a  
20 manufacturing process which is defined for one  
21 bacterial species, or would that be eligible to any  
22 type of bacterial species even if you talk about  
23 making a gram-negative or a gram-positive bacteria,  
24 because then the manufacturing process is not exactly  
25 the same.

1           In one case, you're going to check for  
2           endotoxin content if it's a gram-negative bacteria.  
3           In the other case, you're going to check about  
4           hemolysins, for instance, which is not something that  
5           you're going to check eventually for endotoxin -- for  
6           a gram-negative bacteria.

7           And then what type of quality control level  
8           do you want to get for the set of reference phages?  
9           Everybody agrees that it should be a full set of data  
10          that has been trained to summarize with identity,  
11          toxicity, pre-clinical data, PK, PD, efficacy,  
12          sterility, but the phage that gets into this category  
13          of homologous group, can we just -- is it sufficient  
14          to do identity and sterility?

15          And I want also to bring some ideas of that.  
16          I'm not the father of these ideas. There is somebody  
17          in Belgium, Dr. Fauconnier, who has really some good  
18          ideas about the -- from the regulatory agencies in  
19          Belgium, that has pretty good ideas on how we can take  
20          bits and pieces from different regulatory process to  
21          build up a process for the phage therapy.

22          For instance, we are talking about banking.  
23          When we prepare the banks of bacteria that are going  
24          to produce the phages or the banks of bacteriophages  
25          that are going to be administered to the patient,

1 there is a process which is called the -- for the  
2 allergen extract prepared for a single individual  
3 where the source of material can be very diverse:  
4 pollen, molds, animal epidermals, insect, food,  
5 environmental, et cetera, and the extraction materials  
6 vary a lot according to the material you want to use.

7 Well, there is a process here which is  
8 available today in our countries for approving such  
9 products. So maybe for doing the banking of the  
10 bacteria and the phages we could get inspired from  
11 that process.

12 On the production process, you have  
13 something in the U.S., I believe, which is called the  
14 drug master file, which is something that is some kind  
15 of, if I am correct, some kind of a design, pre-design  
16 process of manufacturing which is not going to change  
17 and that you enter on one side your material and at  
18 the end you get your products out, and this is a fixed  
19 product. This is a fixed process.

20 If you use always the same process, you can  
21 refer to that drug master file number and not have to  
22 explain each time how you are going to manufacture  
23 your product. That also is maybe a good idea for  
24 manufacturing of the phages.

25 And now regarding the third point of phage

1 therapy is product evolution. Product evolution, as  
2 you know, is fully agreed when you make a vaccine.  
3 Well, there is a multi-strain dossier that we have in  
4 Europe where you can change the component of a vaccine  
5 very easily without years to wait, just to adapt the  
6 treatment to the evolution of the threat. Here, it  
7 could be the same thing.

8 I mean, if you have an homologous group of  
9 bacteriophages and you want to change, make an  
10 evolution of one of that phage in that homologous  
11 group, maybe you have a process that we can copy to  
12 just adapt our regulatory process to a quick evolution  
13 with only a limited number of tests for getting  
14 approval of that modified phage.

15 So this is it. Thank you.

16 (Applause.)

17 DR. KINCAID: I think at this point it would  
18 probably be a good idea to have all of our speakers  
19 come up, and I'd also like to invite Dr. Doran Fink  
20 from FDA and Dr. Betty Kutter so that we can first  
21 field some questions because I realize there hasn't  
22 been an opportunity for all of you who might have  
23 questions, but we also have some topics that might be  
24 stimulating in terms of their potential consequence to  
25 development of phage therapy in the future.

1           So, if I could have the speakers come up  
2 here, please.

3           (Pause.)

4           DR. KINCAID: So, before we begin, I'd just  
5 like to invite anyone who has questions, who may have  
6 questions in particular for the last three speakers,  
7 to use this as an opportunity to ask those, and then  
8 we will move on to some of the topics that have been  
9 selected for this. Dr. Stibitz.

10          DR. STIBITZ: Yes. I just wanted to ask  
11 about something in Ry's talk. You stated, I think, in  
12 one of your last slides that you think there is value  
13 in characterizing base modifications for phage. Could  
14 you elaborate a little bit on what you think the value  
15 of that is for phage that we want to vet prior to  
16 using for therapy?

17          DR. YOUNG: Hello, can you hear me? There  
18 we go. Is it working? I can't tell from that.

19          So DNA modification is a major way in which  
20 phages can become insensitive to or can overcome host  
21 defenses beyond the resistance, classical resistance.

22          So many virulent phages that especially have unusual  
23 DNA, some of them have, for example, no thiamine, only  
24 uracil as their DNA base.

25          But the methods for, high-tech new methods

1 for looking at protein and nucleic acids don't really  
2 work very well, the ones we have for assessing the  
3 modifications in these phages, but I think there are  
4 approaches that can be developed that are more based  
5 on classical nucleic acid chemistry that could be very  
6 informative.

7 If we had a way of rapidly checking a new  
8 promising phage for its DNA content and how much of it  
9 is modified and how much of it is normal, I think you  
10 could then eventually index that against many species.

11 DR. STIBITZ: So I'm just wondering to what  
12 degree. I mean, if it's being used as a -- by the  
13 phage as a resistance mechanism to host defenses,  
14 wouldn't that be captured just in the normal screening  
15 for *in vitro* activity?

16 DR. YOUNG: Well, yeah, but you wouldn't know  
17 what was causing it, right?

18 DR. STIBITZ: Sure.

19 DR. YOUNG: And so you could have a phage,  
20 you could have one gene change and then you would have  
21 a gain or loss of the ability to survive in that  
22 organism. I mean, I think having the -- sort of the  
23 classic way of just checking the pattern of resistance  
24 is certainly the thing you want to do, but we have the  
25 ability and I think the incentive to go beyond that to

1 the molecular level. If we had more and more data,  
2 even if it wasn't absolutely required for --

3 DR. STIBITZ: Right.

4 DR. YOUNG: -- the emergency application, we  
5 would be able to look back and start cross-indexing  
6 these molecular features with efficacy and with  
7 redundancy.

8 DR. KUTTER: Well, maybe I'm the person also  
9 to say something about that since I've been working  
10 since 1963 on the question of the role of  
11 hydroxymethylcytosine in T4 phage, and one thing that  
12 came out this past year emphasizes something that may  
13 be relevant in terms of thinking particularly about  
14 phages to be used in the gastrointestinal tract, and  
15 that was something that Sankar Adhya and a student  
16 from Florida had done, finding something called super  
17 spreader phages.

18 They found them when they isolated them from  
19 nature, that there were a couple of phages that tended  
20 to under rather -- under conditions that really looked  
21 for them -- to be able to spread plasmids for  
22 antibiotic resistance to all sorts of different kinds  
23 of bacteria, not just ones where it could be through  
24 phages carrying those.

25 And the way they figured out an idea of what

1 was going on is they went back and used phage that we  
2 had made about 40 years ago that were T4 that are able  
3 to make phage that are purely cytosine in their DNA,  
4 and they are missing a variety of different genes,  
5 including the genes to make the hydroxymethylcytosine  
6 but also the genes to shut off transcription of host  
7 DNA and the genes to degrade the host DNA that are  
8 cytosine-specific. And they found when they used that  
9 strain that was missing all of those, suddenly they  
10 could generate something that was not a full super  
11 spreader thing but that the T4 by itself showed none  
12 of that property, and they had three orders of  
13 magnitude more spreading when they were using those.

14 Now what hasn't been looked at at very many  
15 phage at all is the degree to which they degrade host  
16 DNA, and often you don't even know whether they have  
17 the nucleases to do it. There are other things that  
18 need to be sorted out more, like the ability to infect  
19 stationary phase cells and things like that.

20 So what's really needed, I think, is for NIH  
21 and USDA and so forth to fund a lot more of these  
22 really basic kinds of things, and what we have now is  
23 a few undergrads are working in my lab to try to look  
24 at some of the other standard phages and to see  
25 whether they can get the super spreader phenotype and

1 doing something like phage hunters, and getting  
2 undergraduate schools all over the country to be  
3 looking at some of these properties.

4 I teach at a -- for those of you who  
5 don't -- I'm Betty Kutter, by the way, and for those  
6 of you who don't know, I've been teaching for very  
7 long at a school where almost all of my work is done  
8 by undergraduates since 1972, and I'd like all of you  
9 to invite you to our Evergreen international phage  
10 meeting, our 22nd one of which will be, biennial  
11 meeting, will be in August, but bringing people from a  
12 lot of different backgrounds and really getting more  
13 young people involved in asking a lot of these  
14 questions that will never be done, I think, if we only  
15 have the major labs to follow them up.

16 Thank you for the opportunity to make an ad.

17 (Laughter.)

18 DR. KINCAID: Please.

19 MR. McCLAIN: Yeah, Bruce McClain, United  
20 States Army. You know, most of the applications that  
21 we've heard today were irrigations of a wound or  
22 irrigations of an infected body surface. I mean, I  
23 think there was only the single intravenous  
24 administration. And I know that in your manufacturing  
25 you're concentrating on endotoxin levels and stuff,

1 and yet these wounds are swimming with endotoxin. It  
2 may be that the endotoxin concentrations from a  
3 manufacturing standpoint is a minor component and you  
4 may want to propose to your regulatory, you know,  
5 colleagues that the endotoxin concentration may be  
6 really irrelevant for that type of therapy.

7 DR. GABARD: Yeah, we would have loved to be  
8 able to do that. Unfortunately, you have something  
9 called the pharmacopeia, and the pharmacopeia has some  
10 standards regarding endotoxin content and there is not  
11 so many standards, but there is at least one of them  
12 which is giving figures about the amount of endotoxins  
13 you may have when you do an IV administration, and  
14 then there are a case -- although the treatment was  
15 topical, the agencies considered, because these were  
16 seriously burned patients, that they asked us simply  
17 could the bacteria become septic. I mean, could it  
18 get into the bloodstream? And we said yes.

19 So they asked, and what about the  
20 bacteriophages? Can they go in the blood as well?  
21 And we said yes, they are going to follow the  
22 bacteria. So they said then the standard for your  
23 product needs to be for IV administration, and the  
24 endotoxin content must be about that level.

25 DR. SCHOOLEY: This even came up in the

1 patient that I discussed. As I mentioned, we had this  
2 very nice improvement on Saturday night. By Sunday  
3 morning, he was looking as if he was headed in the  
4 wrong direction again.

5 I called one of my colleagues from  
6 University of Colorado, Charles Dinarello, who has  
7 done a bit of work in this area, because I was  
8 concerned that this was endotoxin-related and was  
9 trying to talk to him about some ways to try to block  
10 this if this was what we had done by escalating the  
11 dose of phage, which I didn't get into today. His  
12 comment was, you know, with endotoxin there is  
13 tachyphylaxis anyway. Why are you worried about this?

14 So, you know, again, I think it's something  
15 to consider, but I also think it's technically  
16 feasible to scrub it anyway, so why not. You know, in  
17 the context of most situations, now that there are  
18 several ways to purify the phage, I don't see any real  
19 reason not to unless you're trying to do it kind of on  
20 the end of a hood in the back of your car.

21 DR. FINK: So, from a regulatory  
22 perspective, I agree with Skip's point entirely. From  
23 a safety perspective, what we worry about is the  
24 product characteristics and the intended use, and if  
25 someone comes to us with a well thought out scientific

1 rationale for why worrying about a particular impurity  
2 is not important and why trying to get rid of that  
3 impurity would be overly burdensome, then we would  
4 certainly take that argument into consideration. But  
5 I haven't heard such an argument yet for endotoxin.

6 DR. KINCAID: Next question, please.

7 MR. TURNER: Hi. I'm Paul Turner from Yale  
8 University. I had a question for Jérôme about -- and  
9 maybe Ry or others want to chime in for this. You  
10 mentioned the challenge of the evolution of the phage,  
11 but what about the more proximate issue of the  
12 competition among phages in a cocktail, how much of  
13 that have you studied and, you know, there's a  
14 possibility that it could actually negate each other's  
15 success during the treatment because they'll compete?

16 DR. GABARD: Very good question. We have  
17 not been doing that with the phages of the Phagoburn  
18 study, but we have been doing some other studies with  
19 some other phages from the other projects, and we have  
20 seen -- it's very preliminary, but I think there is  
21 some good work done in California. We have seen that  
22 if you have -- how can I put it? If you want to use  
23 four phages to fight a bacteria infection, and only  
24 one is active, and you put the three others, you may  
25 lose some activity, clearly. So it's better to use

1 phages that are only active against your strain and to  
2 limit the number.

3 MR. TURNER: Yeah, we were fortunate. We  
4 could only go with -- that we could go with only one  
5 phage in the case that Deepak talked about. But,  
6 okay, that's good. I think it's an interesting  
7 problem that needs follow-up. Thanks.

8 DR. KUTTER: We've done some looking at  
9 various individual phages, like three different kinds  
10 of *Pseudomonas* phages or T4 with several other kinds  
11 of phages, and you certainly find some cases where you  
12 wind up with a complete blocking of production over  
13 the short term of at least one of them.

14 Now, with the T4, for example, even though  
15 it would block all of the T5 and some of the other  
16 kinds of phages when they were simultaneously there,  
17 if you had a low enough MOI that there were a few  
18 percent of the cells that were only infected with one  
19 of them, then 24 hours later the T5-like phage was  
20 doing better because what happens is that when you're  
21 affecting T4 at high multiplicity, it has lysis  
22 inhibition and instead of lysing at 30 minutes it  
23 lyses at six or seven hours, and that allows the other  
24 phages to catch up.

25 So we found that there really were

1 advantages, but there are a lot of reasons why, for  
2 example, in Georgia with the cocktails, and they say  
3 to infect with a relatively low multiplicity so that  
4 you're looking at them having to expand and having to  
5 grow, and we had the same kinds of results that we saw  
6 with some more work with using phage and treating  
7 sheep, that, again, you found out that the optimal  
8 multiplicity was significantly lower than throwing  
9 lots and lots of phage at all the bacteria.

10 DR. GÓRSKI: I mentioned in my talk that we  
11 made such a preliminary observation which may suggest  
12 that patients and cocktails may have higher phage  
13 antibody levels than those receiving single  
14 preparations. Regardless of the outcome of the story  
15 what is the role of peripheral-blocked anti-phage  
16 antibody in phage therapy outcome, this is kind of  
17 information which is interesting because, in our work,  
18 we have found also that phages differ in their  
19 immunogenicity. It may well be that some phages that  
20 are present in a phage cocktail may act as adjuvants.  
21 This is something we need to consider in the future.

22 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I have a question for Dr.  
23 Górski and the French company about propagation of  
24 phages once you -- larger propagation in terms of  
25 actually using it in the clinic.

1           Do you find it more useful to transfer the  
2 phage to a different bacterial host, or do you tend to  
3 keep it in the original strain that you fished it out  
4 with? And I'm just curious if there's any usefulness  
5 in transferring it somewhere else for either higher  
6 phage production or something like that.

7           DR. GABARD: Well, the selection of the  
8 bacteria for production is important, clearly.  
9 Usually we tend to try to find phages that are being  
10 produced into a single bacterial strain just for  
11 manufacturing cost reasons. We couldn't do that for  
12 the first *E. coli* product for the Phagoburn study  
13 where we had to use, if my memory is right, seven  
14 bacterial strains for manufacturing, which was very  
15 expensive because then you have seven working -- well,  
16 a master and working banks.

17           So, in the solution process, when you have  
18 the choice, it's always better to go for one strain,  
19 and sometime the surprises of this manufacturing  
20 strain cannot be used as the titration strain, so you  
21 have to go from the one manufacturing strain, and you  
22 may have to go for a different strain for titrating  
23 your phage during the manufacturing process.

24           DR. GÓRSKI: Well, I think we have the  
25 similar policy. I also mentioned preliminary data

1 which, again, are very, very preliminary but  
2 interesting that when you propagate phages on a strain  
3 that is freed of plasmid and prophage you may get  
4 increased titer and broader host range. This is  
5 something good. It's very promising but again  
6 requires further study.

7 DR. BISWAS: Hi. My name is Biswajit  
8 Biswas. I am from BRD Navy. So I have a question for  
9 Dr. Jérôme Gabard. This is a technical question.

10 I saw in one of your slides that you are  
11 monitoring phage bacterial interaction by lysis method  
12 and you are monitoring it through the  
13 spectrophotometer reading. My question is when phage  
14 lyse the bacteria it produce debris also. So how  
15 relevant is this one for your monitoring system for  
16 phage efficacy?

17 DR. GABARD: I cannot answer that. I'm  
18 sorry. It's not my expertise. It's too technical.  
19 Send me the question and I will ask to our team  
20 because it's beyond my knowledge.

21 DR. BISWAS: Thank you.

22 DR. KUTTER: Actually, when you do lyse  
23 phages, lyse bacteria with phages, we often monitor it  
24 by OD because the OD goes way down at least for *E.*  
25 *coli* and *Pseudomonas* and *Staph*. At the time when your

1 burst of phage is complete, the OD almost totally  
2 vanishes, so it has to do with the way the bacteria  
3 interact with the light and the concentrations in the  
4 bacteria rather than just the three.

5 DR. BISWAS: Yeah, I understood your point,  
6 but we see in many bacteria and many phage, we have  
7 lot of clinical isolate. We see those clinical  
8 isolate when we lyse, not all the time they go through  
9 the complete lysis, sometimes they lyse but produce  
10 the debris which is targeted, and that is the problem  
11 because when you compare one phage to other and the  
12 phage lyse differently in the same bacteria, that is a  
13 problem. So that is my point. Thanks.

14 DR. KUTTER: Yeah, it doesn't lyse it  
15 totally but like eight-fold or something like that  
16 usually with the standard ones, but that's a good  
17 point, yeah.

18 LT REGEIMBAL: Good morning. My name is Lt.  
19 Jimmy Regeimbal. I'm from -- actually, I'm from  
20 NAMRU-6 now in Peru, but I was previously at NMRC  
21 here. And my question actually is much more general  
22 to actually the entire panel. Is it possible to take  
23 a step back and to actually not think about the  
24 product being tested as an individual cocktail, but  
25 instead your product is a library of phages from which

1 you have differentially compounded cocktails that are  
2 personalized or individualized as long as that main  
3 library has been characterized and deemed safe, and  
4 whatever that means, and whatever you think you need  
5 to find a safe library?

6 And so you're really personalizing  
7 everything because I found it interesting, Dr. Gabard,  
8 that you started with fixed cocktails. My guess would  
9 be that if you have good coverage in those Phagoburn  
10 trials it'll probably work fairly well, and if it  
11 doesn't have any coverage, you're probably not going  
12 to see much efficacy.

13 And so what if the whole point is to take a  
14 step back and go this isn't our product? Our product  
15 is a library, and maybe 20 years from now, like Dr.  
16 Young was saying, that you might find that every time  
17 you compound a cocktail against *baumannii* you find the  
18 three -- the same three phages are in it.

19 And so it's like okay, then we'll just start  
20 with those three. But to say we understand that now  
21 might be very premature. And so is there a framework  
22 from which you can say our product in our clinical  
23 trials need to test a library, not a cocktail in any  
24 stretch of the word, and so what you're really doing  
25 is much more -- like we're starting a new way of

1 regulating phages, not like antibiotics or drugs or  
2 anything like it, but it's completely new. Is that  
3 even possible?

4 DR. KUTTER: That's exactly what Górski does  
5 in Poland.

6 LT REGEIMBAL: That's what I understand, but  
7 I guess the point is, is that -- what's the point?  
8 You have to understand that the problem with  
9 specificity, the problems of resistance like, for  
10 example, rather than going and make a new variant to  
11 phage the rule has provided 10 to the 31st. Like why  
12 don't you just go find another one?

13 And so instead, if you have an iterative  
14 library that's constantly being updated over time like  
15 a flu shot or something else, you won't need to  
16 constantly -- but it will also change your CMC, it  
17 will change the characterizations that are required if  
18 it's in the same field, you know what I mean, so, just  
19 generally speaking, is that possible to do in the West  
20 or in the U.S.?

21 DR. FINK: Yeah. So, you know, what you  
22 describe is certainly different than the way that  
23 antibiotics have been regulated and licensed by FDA to  
24 date, but it isn't necessarily new. It doesn't  
25 necessarily require a new regulatory framework. You

1 know, the key question, and I'm going to talk about  
2 this a little bit more in my presentation this  
3 afternoon, is that if you have a large library of  
4 phages, you know, what are the data that you need to  
5 ensure that any phage that you pick out of that  
6 library is going to be both safe and effective for the  
7 intended use? And there may be some, you know, data  
8 that you can derive from a subset of phages in that  
9 library that will allow you to make that type of  
10 determination, but, you know, we're not there yet, and  
11 that's, you know, that's where the field, you know,  
12 really needs to get together and do some thinking.

13 DR. GABARD: And then, in addition to that,  
14 what kind of data package do you provide? If I go  
15 back to Phagoburn, we were lucky enough to initiate  
16 our clinical trials with cocktails. I think we had 16  
17 phages in the first *E. coli* cocktail, so all of them  
18 characterized, sequenced and data package, at least  
19 technical package already available for these  
20 collections.

21 So, at the time being when we knew that we  
22 didn't think about this bank issue, and now we have  
23 some -- you know, when we have banks, small banks of  
24 bacteriophages. But if tomorrow you want to do that,  
25 a recommendation of let's say 50 phages, you're going

1 to do 50 phages in a cocktail and to do that in two  
2 pre-clinical testing in animal models. So that's  
3 where the threshold is. Can we just define a group in  
4 which when you do all these necessary data for  
5 toxicity safety, pharmacokinetics and so on, and how  
6 do we define that group, and how do we expand that  
7 group with phages that belong to the same group with a  
8 limited number of data?

9 DR. YOUNG: So that ultimately, if we do  
10 genomics correctly in a large enough set, we should be  
11 able to do it essentially by genomic analysis period,  
12 which is becoming ridiculously cheap, but we have to  
13 collect the data now for over a very large number of  
14 applications so we can start making those  
15 correlations. That's my feeling. Everything  
16 eventually is determined by the genome.

17 MR. CHEN: Yeah, my name is Rong Chen from  
18 Phagelux. I have a question to Dr. Jérôme Gabard  
19 actually similar to the previous question, but it's a  
20 more practical, real. You select a cocktail which is  
21 fixed number of phages, and they only target a certain  
22 strain of the bacteria. Now, when you do the clinical  
23 trials, multi-site clinical trials, especially multi-  
24 country, you will actually face the problem, likely  
25 you can have a different strain of the bacterial

1 infection. So, therefore, when the trial -- when you  
2 have such a situation, I'm wondering in the Phagoburn  
3 study how did you manage such an issue?

4 DR. GABARD: At the beginning, we decided to  
5 collect strains from all around Europe and USA so that  
6 we had some kind of a pretty big collection that could  
7 represent the genetic diversity of the bacterial  
8 species, but I think it's important for the next  
9 studies that may be run and conducted that a  
10 preliminary diagnostic is done before planning the  
11 treatment, and in our case, it was impossible to do  
12 it, but I think a diagnostic before preliminary  
13 treatment is a good idea so that you make sure that  
14 you recruit a patient that is really sensitive to your  
15 treatment.

16 MR. CHEN: And that's what you did in the  
17 study?

18 DR. GABARD: We didn't do that in the study  
19 for Phagoburn. For Phagoburn, we tried to make a wide  
20 spectrum cocktail based on selecting phages against a  
21 wide collection of bacteria from the same species.

22 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Could I ask about that?  
23 Did you do retrospective when the Phago -- if  
24 something didn't go right? Did they check to see  
25 whether the cocktail worked against the isolated

1 bacteria?

2 DR. GABARD: I think for phage therapy, it's  
3 important to remember you have a low number of  
4 recruitment of patients. If your number is already  
5 low and you don't check at the beginning of the strain  
6 the sensitivity to the treatment, then you end up with  
7 potentially reducing the number of efficient patients.

8 AUDIENCE MEMBER: But did you check?

9 DR. GABARD: No, we didn't.

10 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I mean afterwards.

11 DR. GABARD: Afterward, of course, we did.

12 AUDIENCE MEMBER: And so you could correlate  
13 failures with absence of --

14 DR. GABARD: This is going to come in the  
15 paper.

16 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yes, nice try.

17 DR. GABARD: Good try.

18 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yeah.

19 (Laughter.)

20 DR. KINCAID: Please.

21 AUDIENCE MEMBER: So I'm going to be a  
22 little bit of a heretic, I guess. I've seen a lot of  
23 examples of compassionate use for phage. Makes sense.  
24 I've heard about the banks being formed. The question  
25 I want to ask and it may be both transnational. Is

1 this going to be more than an academic national effort  
2 to develop phage therapy? In other words, what are  
3 the economic incentives for industrial development?  
4 Part of the issue with antibiotics has been, of  
5 course, in the early days, a lot of big companies were  
6 involved in antibiotic development, but as that become  
7 less lucrative they all dropped out. Many of them  
8 have dropped out. Any new antibiotics are basically  
9 reserved for, you know, third-line use when it's  
10 absolutely necessary to use it.

11 So what's the economic incentives for  
12 developing phage therapy at an industrial scale for,  
13 you know, the vast population as opposed to  
14 compassionate use?

15 DR. KUTTER: I can answer. One piece of  
16 that, when we first got involved in this back in 1997,  
17 two people came from Tbilisi and brought their phages,  
18 and we got a bunch of bacteria from cystic fibrosis  
19 patients from Children's Hospital in Seattle, and  
20 theirs had been used in wound care, and what we found  
21 was that all but one of those was very effectively hit  
22 by the group of phages in both Pyophage and  
23 Intestiphage, and the one that wasn't hit later on  
24 when we did the genomic analysis of the 16S RNA turned  
25 out not to be *aeruginosa* even though it had been

1 diagnosed as such. That's not true with all kinds of  
2 bacteria. There certainly are some, but that's  
3 something that companies need to think about as  
4 they're developing it.

5 Similarly, against *E. coli*, a bunch of  
6 similar ones have been isolated against O157 from  
7 countries in every part of the world, from Iran to  
8 Korea to Australia to Evergreen, and some of those  
9 between Evergreen and Belgium were very similar. So  
10 it seems like most of the phages wind up going to a  
11 lot of different countries.

12 DR. SCHOOLEY: I was just going to say I  
13 think, you know, we have to be a little careful about  
14 trying to get so general that you can't get to  
15 specifics about could it ever be used. I think there  
16 are some clinical indications that you could think  
17 about that might be first pegs in the board.

18 For example, if you find that you can more  
19 reliably sterilize prosthetic joint infections by  
20 adding a phage to an antibiotic directed at an  
21 organism that doesn't require 16 phages to cover it,  
22 like *Staph*, you may be able to find a product there  
23 that has a much more traditional paradigm, development  
24 paradigm.

25 As you begin to do that, then you can start

1 filling the blanks around that as people develop a bit  
2 more comfort with the general therapeutic approach and  
3 as more of the molecular data that Ry is talking about  
4 evolves and you can start thinking about how to  
5 extrapolate from that situation.

6 So I think it would be a big mistake to  
7 shoot our feet off before we start trying to walk by  
8 saying it'll never be scalable and why would pharma  
9 ever do this. So I think it's great to raise it, but  
10 I hope nobody outside the room heard it.

11 (Laughter.)

12 DR. KINCAID: I'm going to take a small  
13 prerogative and just put a footnote on our first phage  
14 workshop that was held two years ago. We did receive  
15 interest from major providers of solution sets for  
16 surgical intervention. So it's one of those cases, as  
17 Chip just pointed out, where there are people always  
18 who are looking for an opportunity if they feel that  
19 it's going to make their products better or improve  
20 or, in a contrary sense, to reduce the liabilities  
21 associated with their products. They'll probably in a  
22 very measured way take whatever measures are necessary  
23 to consider phage as potential, you know, adjunctive  
24 elements to their products.

25 So I think I agree with Chip that we have to

1 wait and see how these things play out as more and  
2 more people become familiar with the nature of the  
3 potential for the product.

4 MS. EMRICK: Good morning, afternoon. I am  
5 Robin Emrick, and just a member of the interested  
6 public. And listening to you guys this morning got me  
7 thinking about something and, actually, Dr. Schooley,  
8 you sort of hinted at it. I hear about the problems  
9 of the specificity and nailing it down, and I thought  
10 I wonder if somebody isn't already looking at and  
11 solved the idea of having a less acute circumstance  
12 where like, okay, you're going to have this kind of  
13 surgery in three weeks and we're going to start you on  
14 some kind of a, I'll say generalized phage therapy  
15 that's going to knock down the prevalence of  
16 resistance plasmids that may or may not be present in  
17 your system. Just kind of prime your body to already  
18 be a little more responsive to the antibiotics they  
19 already have.

20 DR. KINCAID: So that turns out to be a  
21 rephrasing of one of the topics that we had talked  
22 about discussing here. We've had such a good response  
23 I didn't want to break that flow, but in a more  
24 general sense, it would be useful for the panel to  
25 weigh in on the sort of scope of phage use that could

1 be considered in a preemptive way as a prophylaxis.  
2 Is this something that one might consider, whether it  
3 be surgical intervention or decolonization of at-risk  
4 patient populations? I mean, quite apart from the  
5 business model. What's the feeling from surgeons and  
6 others?

7 DR. NARAYAN: So that's a thought that I  
8 brought up with Randy earlier on. The problem,  
9 though, is that if, as we pointed out earlier, you  
10 start administering these phages way ahead of surgery,  
11 then you can potentially build up other resistant  
12 organisms, as we've seen with antibiotics. It seems  
13 to make complete sense to sort of rid your body of all  
14 antibiotics before you proceed to interventional  
15 procedures which implant large volume of foreign  
16 substances, but it's never been shown to be effective  
17 since antibiotics are useful if you give them  
18 immediately before surgery and doses during surgery.

19 And so the question is could we do that with  
20 phages as well, as opposed to doing it *a priori* and  
21 then building up resistant organisms?

22 DR. SCHOOLEY: I'd like to invite Dr.  
23 Narayan to join our Department of Surgery because our  
24 surgeons often are not that concrete in their thinking  
25 because they put antibiotic beads in everything, and

1 the data supporting that is relatively modest.

2           If you think about it, there are situations,  
3 though, where phage are not going to be -- as far as  
4 we can tell aren't a big problem. If you have a  
5 prosthesis you're putting in, you do get periodically  
6 *Staph epi* infections, for example, of hips. But the  
7 difficulty in clinical development is if you have a  
8 good surgeon and you have good antibiotic and you have  
9 good antiseptic conditions, the instance of that is  
10 low enough that showing that by sprinkling some phage  
11 in that you've decreased the instance of that  
12 complication is complicated, is very difficult.

13           And so I think the clinical development  
14 paradigm is complicated even though theoretically it  
15 makes a lot of sense as long as you do it at the time  
16 and don't get way ahead of yourself and allow for  
17 second and third generation organisms to populate,  
18 which is what Darwin's all about.

19           DR. KUTTER: I think one other thing that  
20 we've been thinking about, and we've done some work  
21 and published one paper on working with treating  
22 diabetic toe ulcers with phage, and we started by  
23 using just pure *Staph* phage. We did that even though  
24 we knew there probably are other bacteria besides the  
25 ones that are coming out and what they're saying, but

1 the podiatrists see *Staph* as the head of the snake in  
2 these kinds of particularly very poorly aerated toe  
3 situations and so forth, and what we found is even  
4 though we had Pyophage available with others if we  
5 needed it, the staph alone has been enough to treat  
6 all 11 patients we've tried before whose only other  
7 possibility was amputation, which normally then within  
8 five years even if it's just a toe to start with leads  
9 to death.

10           And so I'd really like to see some of those  
11 kinds of situations. I mean, I've seen *Staph* and  
12 diabetic foot being a logical target since I saw my  
13 first experiment in 1996. It wasn't an experiment, it  
14 was a treatment by the leading surgeon in Tbilisi, and  
15 what amazed me was not only that it worked to treat a  
16 foot that had come in for amputation, but he was  
17 95 percent sure it would work.

18           In other words, you're talking there with a  
19 situation where it may be that *Staph* is indeed the  
20 head of the snake and simply making a bed that allows  
21 other bacteria to grow as well, but the wound's all  
22 healed. That's the final thing that we've used so far  
23 even though half of them have very obvious  
24 osteomyelitis. There's clearly bone infection and the  
25 *Staph* is getting into the bone.

1           And I would really like to see, and I think  
2           several groups, both AmpliPhi and Pherecydes are  
3           talking about really going to that model, and what  
4           we're just starting to do now is to do metagenomics  
5           and look at the wounds before and after and see in  
6           that case what bacteria are really present and to what  
7           degree our model is true.

8           I think we need to choose some of those  
9           simple situations and make it possible without it  
10          costing a million dollars right away for trials to be  
11          run that are simply adding something to a standard  
12          treatment that's happening and not being an expensive  
13          clinical trial or even very expensive processes. He's  
14          just been doing it in his office, and it's simply  
15          something that we add without any extra expense. And  
16          I think we need a lot more of that kind of data and  
17          not just the data that's come from things that are  
18          what will be necessary for the companies wanting to  
19          make a lot of bucks about it.

20          I'd like to see a simple *Staph* phage thing  
21          be in effect like the -- like it's used with vaccines  
22          or even with aspirin where it's -- you know, what we  
23          use is about \$5 worth of phage from Tbilisi to treat,  
24          and I'd like there to be situations where we can get a  
25          lot of this kind of data that's done very generally

1 and for relatively little money and be able to really  
2 build up an understanding better of what's going on.

3 DR. NARAYAN: I'm going to circle back to  
4 the commercial question as well as reply to the  
5 previous question. So a good scenario, for instance,  
6 is ventral hernias are a very common surgical problem.  
7 You have a big operation. A significant number,  
8 especially in this day and age with obesity being so  
9 high, develop ventral hernias. And so you treat  
10 ventral hernias by putting in prosthetic mesh, and  
11 then we see this sort of cycle of when it gets  
12 infected you have this core population that cannot get  
13 rid of an infection.

14 So, to Randy's point, that might be a  
15 situation where you can actually apply certain phages  
16 specific to the bug that you've sort of identified.  
17 In fact, there are matrices available now, rifampin-  
18 coated prosthetic meshes which sort of address the  
19 issue of MRSA, for instance, and that might actually  
20 be a commercially viable proposition given the  
21 increasing number of surgeries that you see, as well  
22 as addressing the issue of, you know, prophylactically  
23 giving phage even though in clean cases the incidence  
24 of infection is really low, say, maybe on the order of  
25 1 to 2 percent. These cases represent a fairly large

1 number that can actually be both commercially viable  
2 as well as treatable by phages specific to the  
3 particular bacteria.

4 DR. FINK: One last point, and I see we have  
5 another question. So, just to get back to the issue  
6 of preventative use of phages or use for  
7 decolonization, there's no *a priori* reason why from a  
8 regulatory standpoint a phage therapy product couldn't  
9 be developed for preventative use, and, in fact, it's  
10 serendipitous that the regulatory review of  
11 bacteriophage products is housed in the Office of  
12 Vaccines at CBER, so we have a lot of experience  
13 regulating preventative products, and, of course, the  
14 devil is always in the details of clinical trial  
15 design and selection of end points.

16 DR. KINCAID: Okay. We have time for one  
17 question according to my timer. So, Carl.

18 DR. MERRIL: I'd like the panel, if they  
19 could, to amplify a little bit more about the  
20 economics. I want to just make a comment. I'm  
21 carrying this because, in 2003, I was invited to give  
22 the Harold Neu Infectious Disease Conference lecture  
23 on phage. This was when I had just done a study that  
24 we published in PNAS showing that phage could be  
25 highly efficacious and we could even make special

1 phage that were long-circulating, and so they invited  
2 me to give this lecture.

3 But, in fact, the people from the companies,  
4 this was Glaxo and some other companies, said exactly  
5 what the previous questioner had brought up, that  
6 there just wasn't money in infectious diseases and  
7 they were cutting back on their antibiotic production.

8 But the reason I'm bringing it up as a  
9 question now is that there are factors that are  
10 affecting the economics, and I wonder if you could  
11 comment on them. For instance, the fact that  
12 hospitals are now responsible for hospital-acquired  
13 infections, number one; and number two, the time spent  
14 in an ICU can be far greater than anything anybody  
15 spends on any of these therapies we're talking about.  
16 I'm sure with Dr. Patterson his ICU time was immense.

17 DR. SCHOOLEY: He was lucky he was sick  
18 during a period when there was no cap on lifetime  
19 costs from insurance companies.

20 There are all kinds of costs that can be  
21 calculated into how this all comes back to us as a  
22 society. The problem is that they're all in different  
23 buckets, and that is where, you know, we have to try  
24 to figure out how to rationalize it so that we as a  
25 society can realize that the investment's worth it,

1 but the individual funders themselves don't see it in  
2 it for them.

3 Companies want something that you give  
4 people for life, so they don't like antibiotics that  
5 work. They like antiretrovirals because you have to  
6 give them for life, but they don't like anti-HCV  
7 drugs, for example. Phage that work and sterilize,  
8 they're not going to like any more than they like  
9 these fourth generation antibiotics that they give to  
10 six people twice a year who have bacteria you can't  
11 treat with anybody else.

12 As an infectious disease physician, I'm  
13 always arguing with the hospital that the reason we're  
14 there is to reduce antibiotic use so you have fewer  
15 people in the ICU with multidrug-resistant  
16 antibiotics, and therefore I need to find a way to pay  
17 the faculty in my division, and the department in the  
18 hospital always says, well, just bill the patients.  
19 We're the ones who collect the money for the hospital.  
20 Don't you worry about that.

21 So you end up -- I think it's really a  
22 multiple bucket issue more than it is an issue of is  
23 it worth it as a society to do this. I think it is  
24 worth it as a society, but I think we need to be more  
25 creative in terms of how we cost account it. That's

1 the extent of my physician/country doctor statement.

2 DR. GABARD: I'm going to take on that  
3 physician/country doctor statement role for a second.  
4 So, if you look at it from a strictly commercial  
5 standpoint, all you have to do is look around. The  
6 Epi-Pen cost has gone up 400 percent. Martin Shkreli  
7 is on trial now for increasing costs for generics over  
8 7,000 percent. So there may be something in the  
9 market forces itself drives the economics of  
10 potentially using this in a commercially viable  
11 fashion, and so that's never been addressed and I hope  
12 it never gets out of this room that, you know, phages  
13 can be sort of overpriced, if you will, to make  
14 economic sense for the companies.

15 DR. GÓRSKI: One thing that surprises me  
16 always when we have this type of discussion is that,  
17 let's say someone gets cancer, you're going to  
18 increase his life by 12 months, and you're going to  
19 spend 20,000 bucks while doing that in treatment. So  
20 maybe he's going to lose his leg and you're going to  
21 spend 5,000 euros or dollars to preventative  
22 treatment, and this is too expensive? There is a  
23 problem.

24 DR. KINCAID: Well, I wanted to take this  
25 moment, first of all, it's an interesting note to end

1 on, so philosophical but also so real, and this is a  
2 classical concern for infectious disease generally  
3 speaking, not just phage.

4 But anyway, I want to take a moment to thank  
5 all of our speakers and our panelists for a very  
6 stimulating morning session, and I'm not exactly sure  
7 when we return. Do you have the number? One-oh-five  
8 according to Roger. Okay. Thank you very much.

9 (Applause.)

10 (Whereupon, at 12:15 p.m., the workshop in  
11 the above-entitled matter recessed, to reconvene at  
12 1:05 p.m. this same day, Monday, July 10, 2017.)

13 //

14 //

15 //

16 //

17 //

18 //

19 //

20 //

21 //

22 //

23 //

24 //

25 //

1 //

2 //



1 therapeutic products. But really I want to kind of  
2 give an overview of where I think we are now and what  
3 I see as some obvious paths for the future, and I  
4 don't want -- we don't want to intend this to be like  
5 some kind of, you know, dictat that I'm giving to the  
6 audience about the things that everybody has to do,  
7 but these are things that we've been doing in our  
8 program and I think they've been helpful for us.

9 All right. So, when we talk about phage  
10 characterization, really, there's -- you know, we're  
11 doing this for a reason, right, so the reason is  
12 really you want to increase the efficacy, right, so  
13 you want to try to pick phages that hopefully have  
14 highest efficacy or at the very least get rid of  
15 phages that you think are not going to have any  
16 efficacy.

17 We want to increase safety, right. So we  
18 want to obviously eliminate phages that might have any  
19 deleterious features, at least ones that we can  
20 identify now with our understanding of phage biology,  
21 and also to increase efficiency, which is not  
22 something which is often talked about, but really this  
23 has to do with keeping yourself sane and trying to  
24 pick phages that actually are going to hopefully be  
25 better behaved in the lab and ones you can actually

1 deal with, and to try to reduce your workload.

2 So, whenever you want to try to characterize  
3 a phage, I think especially when we're talking about  
4 phage applications here for some kind of therapeutic,  
5 you really want to have a reason, right. So, for  
6 example, if you characterize a phage for thermal  
7 stability, you know, unless you're planning on putting  
8 the phage in a 70 degree environment, it doesn't  
9 really help you that much.

10 So, really, you should have an end point and  
11 you should have an actionable outcome for the  
12 characterization. Are you going to use this  
13 information to make a decision about using the phage  
14 or are you going to be able to rank the phages or are  
15 you going to be able to, you know, make some kind of  
16 rational combination of phages?

17 So host range obviously is probably the  
18 oldest character of a phage that people have looked  
19 at. It's still, I think, one of the most important  
20 characteristics. It really is kind of the minimum  
21 requirement for any kind of efficacy, right? I think  
22 the basic requirement for a phage you want to use for  
23 any kind of antibacterial is that it has to actually  
24 infect the strain that you're attempting to treat,  
25 right? That's kind of the basic.

1           But the needs of host range will vary  
2 depending on the application you're looking for. So,  
3 for the more kind of company approach where you're  
4 trying to have like a mass produced and distributed  
5 product like, for example, Phagoburn, or the company  
6 approach, you know, you're really going to have a bias  
7 towards finding phages that have broader host range as  
8 much as possible. But if you're going for kind of the  
9 experimental, you know, personalized medicine eIND  
10 approach, having broad host range phages in a  
11 collection is convenient, but it's not necessarily  
12 required because if you have a phage that only infects  
13 that strain that you're trying to treat, but if it  
14 works well, that's really all you need.

15           But even then host range doesn't nearly give  
16 you all the information that you need, right. So you  
17 want to have all the phages that infect one target  
18 strain, and so this is going to work. Yes.

19           So, if you can imagine, here this is a KPC1.  
20 This is actually the NIH clinical center outbreak  
21 strain here. So we have a lot of phages that infect  
22 this strain. These are six phages that are isolated  
23 in our group over the last few years, and they all  
24 infect this strain. So, if this is the strain you  
25 want to treat, you have a lot of phage options. And

1 so these tells you these are phages you could use, but  
2 you may not necessarily want to use all six. That  
3 might be redundant. And you probably want to use more  
4 than one. And even if it does infect the strain, you  
5 don't have any guarantee it'll actually have any  
6 efficacy *in vivo*.

7 So another assay that you can -- factor that  
8 you can characterize is, you know, virulence, and so  
9 this is basically the ability of the phage to inhibit  
10 bacterial growth in liquid culture. This is probably  
11 one of the -- this is probably the second oldest  
12 character that's used for phage therapy. This is done  
13 in test tube, so we have very, of course,  
14 sophisticated ways of measuring it now. This is done  
15 in an automated plate reader where you can take a time  
16 point every 10 minutes. But really the result you're  
17 looking at is the integration of the absorption rate,  
18 latent period, and burst size of the phage altogether  
19 in this liquid culture.

20 So you can have this high throughput, but  
21 the principle is really the same as it was in the  
22 1930s, but if you optimize the method a little bit,  
23 you can get some distinguishing between different  
24 phages. So here on the left these are all phages that  
25 infect -- these are KPC positive *Klebsiella*

1     *pneumoniae*, a clinical strain. So, on the left, you  
2     have a high input MOI of phage to bacteria. All the  
3     phages look roughly the same, so you can see they're  
4     all what you would call virulent in liquid culture.

5             But if you, you know, tweak your inputs a  
6     little bit and you have less phage going in, you can  
7     see and you can start to separate these phages, and  
8     then this may give you some kind of indication of  
9     efficacy of these phages, and you can see this one  
10    phage down here, which is called "Pharr," suppresses  
11    growth better than the other phages, and so this might  
12    give you some indication that maybe this phage would  
13    be -- if you have to pick one of these phages that all  
14    infect the same strain, maybe Pharr would be one that  
15    you'd want to look at more closely as opposed to other  
16    phages.

17    So, when you're determining host range, I mean, the  
18    classic, the good-old spot assay, which I'm sure a lot  
19    of people here have done, it gives you a basic measure  
20    of phage sensitivity, but you can actually couple your  
21    virulence screening with your host strain, which is  
22    something we've started doing and Dr. Biswas has also  
23    started doing this as well in his nice -- the Omnilog  
24    System where you can kind of just do the virulence  
25    assays in a high throughput way and you can get an

1 idea of the host strains and the virulence of the  
2 phage in one go.

3           So here are two different *Salmonella* strains  
4 with the same phage. You can see this strain here,  
5 3003 is insensitive to this phage, right. You don't  
6 see any difference in growth when you add the phage,  
7 whereas here you can see an inflection of growth and  
8 so this tells you that this strain is sensitive to the  
9 phage, and also, if you have a number of phages that  
10 are sensitive, that give you some growth inflection,  
11 you get some idea about how sensitive they are or how  
12 active they are against that strain.

13           So that's kind of where we are now and  
14 that's really how we're selecting phages. You have to  
15 remember these are really criteria that were  
16 developed, you know, in the '30s, and what we do now  
17 is much more sophisticated ways of measuring it, but  
18 the principle is about the same, and so we think this  
19 is kind of the minimum for being able to deploy a  
20 phage, but we really should be able to try to get more  
21 information about the phages now, like the genome  
22 sequence and phenotypes of phage insensitivity and  
23 receptor use.

24           So one thing I didn't mention before is  
25 detection of temperate phages. So this is something

1 that the early phage therapists that were talked about  
2 this morning in the '30s didn't really have to deal  
3 with because they didn't know it existed yet.

4 One of the kind of classic things you see  
5 sometimes in the literature is that you can just look  
6 at a plaque morphology and turbid plaques mean  
7 temperate phages, and that is really not true. There  
8 are a lot of virulent phages that will make turbid  
9 plaques, and we have temperate phages that will make  
10 very nice and clear plaques.

11 So, in our experience, the virulence assays,  
12 like I showed you earlier, one way to -- the temperate  
13 phages will tend to fall out in those kinds of assays  
14 because you'll have really rapid growth of lysogens  
15 that will come up very quickly and they will look just  
16 bad in the virulence assay.

17 Another method that we use is to just  
18 isolate phage insensitive, you know, mutants, what we  
19 call air quote "mutants" of a bacterial strain, and  
20 then we just look in the culture supernatant for the  
21 presence of that phage because, if it was actually  
22 insensitive to the phage because it formed a lysogen,  
23 most temperate phages will spontaneously induce from  
24 the lysogen stage at a low rate, and so just overnight  
25 culture supernatants will have phage that you can then

1 spot them back on the parent, and so if you have that  
2 phage there, that's a good indication that it actually  
3 formed a lysogen, and also you can use PCR to screen  
4 as well if you have the genome sequence.

5 So this is one way to look to see if you  
6 have a temperate phage or a couple ways you can use.

7 So I'll talk a little bit about receptor  
8 use. So, if you know what the phage's receptor is,  
9 that really can help predict the interaction and also  
10 maybe help you plan ahead to overcome bacterial  
11 resistance in the future. So our experience with the  
12 Patterson case, of course, is that we didn't have any  
13 of this information, so it's not essential for use,  
14 but it is nice to have that information, I think. So,  
15 if you have the opportunity to get that kind of  
16 information, I think it would be beneficial to get,  
17 and there's a couple ways you can get at this. You  
18 can get it on a purely phenotypic level, which is  
19 usually looking at cross-resistance, and you can get  
20 at it on the more genetic level.

21 So, if we look at just doing this straight  
22 up kind of classic cross-resistance, so these are --  
23 this is a panel of phages against *Salmonella anatum*  
24 from my lab, and here we just want to look at what's  
25 boxed out here.

1           So we have a bunch of phages here on the  
2 left, and we isolated phage-resistant mutants against  
3 all these various phages here, 6, 9, 12, 15, and 27A,  
4 and so you can see that, for example, the Mut15 phage  
5 is now insensitive to phage 15, as you'd expect. But  
6 we want to look here at phages 6 and 9, so if we have  
7 a mutant that's insensitive to phage 6, it's still  
8 sensitive to phage 9, and we have vice-versa. Mutant  
9 that's sensitive to phage 9 or that's become resistant  
10 to phage 9 is still sensitive to phage 6.

11           All right, because it's kind of reciprocal  
12 cross-resistance here, so when you look at these kinds  
13 of phenotypes, this can help you design a phage  
14 cocktail that'll help you maybe overcome phage  
15 resistance because we know that if the cell becomes  
16 resistant to one phage it will still be sensitive to  
17 the other one and vice-versa.

18           It's a pretty low-tech method, all right, so  
19 you're really just, you know, you're just plating  
20 stuff out on agar plates and picking surviving  
21 colonies. It's not super-complicated, and it doesn't  
22 really tell you what the receptor is, but it just  
23 tells you what the phenotypes are, and you can see  
24 this is borne out in these kinds of, you know, liquid  
25 virulence assays again. You can see phage 6 and phage

1 9. If you expose them to the bacteria, you get  
2 resistance, survivors come up after about eight to 10  
3 hours, will start growing up, but if you mix the two  
4 of them together, you suppress the arrival of that  
5 resistance, at least for the 12 hours that we ran the  
6 experiment.

7           You can see that if you were worried about  
8 phage resistance you can get around that. You can  
9 kind of get ahead of the game by rationally designing  
10 the phage cocktail if you know what the resistant  
11 phenotypes are.

12           Sometimes it's not super-cooperative, so  
13 this is a whole bunch of phages we isolated against  
14 KPC *K. pneumoniae*, and we found that pretty much all  
15 of the phages here -- so here we have the bacterial  
16 strain, here it is on the left this time. These are  
17 all resistant to each of these phages and the phages  
18 here are on the top.

19           So you can see of this whole phage  
20 collection here every strain that became resistant to  
21 one phage became resistant to every other phage in  
22 this panel, which is a little disappointing, but it  
23 means that all these phages are probably using the  
24 same receptor and one thing it does help us out with  
25 is it means that there's probably not much point in

1 mixing a bunch of these phages together because, if  
2 the host becomes resistant to one phage, it can become  
3 resistant to all the other ones, and really that then  
4 guides us to actually, you know, doing a new phage  
5 hunt and taking one of these phage-resistant mutants,  
6 then finding new phages that will infect this strain  
7 from the environment or generating a mutant in the  
8 lab, and this is what we have done. We were able to  
9 go out into the environment using one of these hosts  
10 and we can find phages that infect these strains just  
11 fine to overcome that resistance.

12 So actually genetically determining the  
13 phage receptor is a little more arduous to do, but it  
14 can definitely be worthwhile. So phages can really --  
15 they can recognize pretty much anything on the cell  
16 surface. That can be carbohydrates like a capsule or  
17 LPS. It can be an outer membrane protein or membrane  
18 protein or any kind of cell surface extension like a  
19 flagella or a pili.

20 So there's a few ways you can get at  
21 genetically what the actual receptor feature is. If  
22 you have existing knockout libraries, for example, of  
23 a convenient host that are already knocked out in all  
24 your known surface features, you can just spot the  
25 phages against those on a plate and you'll find its

1 resistant to some of them and you can get to the  
2 receptor that way if you happen to have that.

3 You can do Tn5 mutagenesis or isolate  
4 spontaneous knockouts or spontaneous phages with the  
5 mutants, then just re-sequence them to get to the  
6 nature of the phage receptor, right. It's a little  
7 more work to do, but if you actually know what actual  
8 surface feature of the phages you're going after, you  
9 can do some neat tricks, right.

10 So one is that if you know what the receptor  
11 is, you can maybe predict if the resistance is linked  
12 to other phenotypes, like reduced virulence or  
13 sensitivity to antibiotics. So this is a table from a  
14 paper from a few years ago, and these are phages  
15 against a *Klebsiella pneumoniae* strain, and you can  
16 see the phage-sensitive strain here. We're looking at  
17 the LD50, right, so this is how, basically how  
18 virulent that strain is.

19 There's a wild type strain here as 1.5 times  
20 10 to the 8th, and when they made phage-resistant  
21 mutants against the phage here called phage NK5, you  
22 see that the LD50 went up by a lot, right. So,  
23 basically, this strain became 50 to 100 times less  
24 virulent once it became resistant to the phage, and  
25 they hypothesize that the receptor is probably the

1 capsule or the LPS, which are important for virulence  
2 in *Klebsiella*, but if you know what the receptor is,  
3 then you can actually maybe pick phages that are going  
4 to go after known virulence determinants on the cell  
5 surface.

6           And another, you know, great trick from --  
7 this is much more recently, is looking at this phage  
8 which is actually specific for this outer membrane  
9 protein which is an efflux pump that caused antibiotic  
10 resistance. So, if you have a phage specific for that  
11 particular efflux pump, right, so when the -- and this  
12 is the strain here, and when it becomes resistant to  
13 the phage, you can see that it becomes sensitive to  
14 tetracycline, right. So, again, you have a huge  
15 fitness cost associated with the strain becoming  
16 resistant to the phage. And so, if you knew  
17 beforehand that that's what this phage does, then you  
18 can actually look at doing co-treatment with the phage  
19 and an antibiotic.

20           So we like to do phage genomics. That's one  
21 of our fun hobbies that we do at the center. There  
22 are about 2200 phages, phage genomes in INSDC right  
23 now, which is really actually a small fraction when  
24 you compare that to how many bacterial genomes there  
25 are in the database, so they're really pretty

1 underrepresented still.

2           So right now you can have some predictive  
3 ability using phage genomics to pick out a phage that  
4 you might want to use. So you can increase efficacy  
5 and safety. So one thing you can -- by looking at the  
6 genome, it can also help tell you if the phages can be  
7 virulent or temperate, right. So we know enough about  
8 phage biology now that if you find a phage which looks  
9 exactly like T7, that's going to be a virulent phage,  
10 right. So we have some understanding on phage biology  
11 to that level.

12           You can look for toxins, virulence factors,  
13 at least ones that you might know of, and you can  
14 exclude phages that you might expect to perform  
15 poorly. For example, if you had a phage and it turned  
16 out to be an F-specific phage, it's very easy for the  
17 host to become resistant to those, and you might want  
18 to then put those farther down the list in terms of  
19 when you want to use for therapeutics, and it can also  
20 really increase your efficiency, and this is -- it's  
21 kind of a selfish reason for doing it, but still it  
22 really saves you a lot of work because if you have the  
23 genome and you can see that you have a bunch of phages  
24 that are almost exactly the same as each other, you  
25 may not want to necessarily continue developing all of

1       them, right. You might just want to pick a few  
2       representatives and go with that to prevent, you know,  
3       duplicating work, and you can also make some  
4       predictions on how the phage is going to function  
5       based on the type.

6                So I want to show you a couple examples from  
7       our own work of really how helpful phage genomics is.  
8       This is a genome of a phage called BcepIL02. When we  
9       sequenced it, it really had no homologs in the  
10      database. It's kind of a novel type. It's 63 kb  
11      genome, circularly permuted. Here is the map. So  
12      what's important here to notice is that where this red  
13      arrow is pointing, it has tyrosine recombinase, and  
14      actually next to it it has cI and Cro-like  
15      transcription regulators, so it really looks like  
16      maybe a temperate phage.

17               But before we had done the genome we had  
18      actually used this in a mouse model of *Burkholderia*  
19      *cenocepacia* lung infection, and it was therapeutically  
20      effective, right. This phage gave us about a 100-  
21      fold, two log reduction in bacterial load in the mouse  
22      lung, and, you know, I thought it was a successful  
23      study. But then, once we sequenced the genome, we  
24      found it looked like a temperate phage.

25               In the past in the previous assay I told you

1 about where you take your phage-resistant mutants and  
2 you look to see if they're lysogens. So it turns out  
3 that this phage is what we call a cryptic-temperate  
4 phage, so it is a temperate phage, but it's unable to  
5 actually form a stable lysogen in the host that we  
6 were using in the mouse model, and the reasons for  
7 that we think is because the att sites that this phage  
8 recognizes was not -- it didn't happen to be present  
9 in that strain, so it wasn't able to stably integrate,  
10 but it was nonetheless a temperate phage.

11 So we broke like one of our rules right off  
12 the bat here and accidentally used a temperate phage for  
13 therapeutic use and while it worked well in the mouse  
14 model we would really have to think long and hard  
15 about it if we actually wanted to try to deploy  
16 something like this in the world.

17 So another -- this is, of course, the  
18 clinical intervention that Chip talked about this  
19 morning. So we were involved in this in February and  
20 March and April of last year. So the CPT got the call  
21 in and we received the strain from UCSD, as Chip had  
22 told us about earlier, and we isolated *de novo* three  
23 new phages and we had a fourth called AC4 which was  
24 supplied by AmpliPhi, and the U.S. Navy isolated four  
25 phages, and this was turned around in about 15 days

1 from the time we received the strain, which was, I  
2 thought, pretty heroic. But the infecting strain  
3 became resistant to all the phages after eight days,  
4 and as Ry talked about earlier, this whole venture  
5 really kind of turned the whole lab upside down for  
6 two, three months.

7 I'm showing these two people here. This is  
8 Jacob and Adriana. These are the two people that  
9 actually did most of the work in the lab, and I want  
10 to show you this picture because they haven't slept in  
11 about three days when this picture was taken. This is  
12 actually the first shipment of phage that was ready to  
13 be shipped in the FedEx, like same-day delivery pick-  
14 up guy was about to come. And so it was a huge really  
15 heroic effort, right, to generate these phages.

16 And it turns out that after the dust had  
17 settled and then over the summer and the fall of last  
18 year we sequenced the genomes of all the phages that  
19 we had and it turns out they're all almost exactly the  
20 same, right. They're all T4-like large myophages that  
21 infect *Acinetobacter baumannii*. There are some  
22 differences. They are not exactly the same. There is  
23 some variability here, but I wouldn't say the  
24 diversity is very high, and this is one reason  
25 probably why the strain became resistant to all the

1 phages at more or less the same time, was because all  
2 the phages were pretty close to each other.

3 So, if we had had this knowledge beforehand,  
4 this here is a map actually showing two of our phages.  
5 This is C2P24 and C1P12. You can see of the three  
6 phages we isolated they were almost 100 percent  
7 identical. They were very, very close to each other.  
8 Only a few SNPs different between them.

9 You can see here AC4 is somewhat different.  
10 This is showing this protein-protein similarity here.  
11 But if we had known this beforehand, we really could  
12 have saved ourselves, you know, a lot of stress and  
13 headache and heartache preparing four phages when we  
14 probably could have just prepared two or maybe even  
15 one, right. So that would have actually really  
16 streamlined the efforts a lot better and we could have  
17 had a much more efficient deployment of the treatment.  
18 We could have maybe anticipated that we would have  
19 this cross-resistant would come up if we had  
20 foreknowledge of what the receptors are, and so we're  
21 currently working on determining what the phage  
22 receptors are. I think Dr. Biswas is going to talk  
23 more about that this afternoon, so I'm going to leave  
24 it there.

25 And also the *in vivo* screening, right. So,

1 this is something that we still do. I think screening  
2 phages in an animal model is still the standard way to  
3 de-risk new treatments, but really I'm thinking about  
4 trying to do this kind of *in vivo* work in a  
5 different -- maybe with a different strategy, right.  
6 Most of the stuff that has been published to date is  
7 about seeing -- to show that the phages can work,  
8 right.

9 So it's like proof-of-concept type of thing,  
10 and you want to show the phages are able to control  
11 infections *in vivo*, but you could maybe start looking  
12 at trying to -- if you have a bunch of phages that  
13 you're pretty sure are going to work, then try to  
14 figure out which ones are going to work best, right.  
15 And so while you're doing this you also will be able  
16 to get data on dynamics and administration routes and  
17 also the phenotypes of phage-resistant bacteria and  
18 also maybe the immunogenicity of the phages as well.

19 So this won't be able to be done for all  
20 phages, right, so anyone who's ever done animal model  
21 development, it's pretty arduous. Not all the past  
22 strains you're going to be working with are going to  
23 probably work in the mouse model. So you're going to  
24 have to have a few kind of go-to strains and use  
25 phages that infect those strains to get some of this

1 information. So you won't be able to screen  
2 necessarily every phage, but you'll probably be able  
3 to screen at least kind of a subset of the phages you  
4 have or at least a representative of all the different  
5 types of phages that you have.

6 This is an example of some data from a paper  
7 from Debarbieux's group at Pasteur from a few years  
8 ago where they tested the same kind of idea. They  
9 tested a bunch of phages here. These phages up here  
10 that are color in the top are phages they isolated  
11 against this particular *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*  
12 challenge strain, and then down here they have other  
13 phages, and you can see some of these work better than  
14 others, right. So the ones that are up here in the  
15 colors work better. You had better survival of the  
16 mice following a bacterial challenge, and the gray  
17 ones down here worked worse.

18 And, you know, this also does kind of go  
19 back to they did those *in vitro* virulence assays and  
20 you can see the ones that did worse in the *in vitro*  
21 assays also did worse in this *in vivo* screen. So this  
22 can give you also some information about maybe what  
23 phages you want to use and not.

24 So PhiKZ is actually an old, well-known,  
25 very virulent *in vitro* phage of *Pseudomonas*

1     *aeruginosa*. It's one of these giant phages, giant  
2     myophages. But if you had this kind of data, you  
3     might think, well, I'm not sure if I want to bother  
4     giving this to a person or to try to use this for  
5     treatment because it doesn't do very well in the mouse  
6     model, right. So it's again another way to try to  
7     increase your efficacy.

8             So the last thing I want to talk about is  
9     phage immunogenicity, right. So this is a classic  
10    Merril & Biswas, 1996 paper, right. So this showed  
11    that if you had phages, that you could select for  
12    phages that had longer circulating half-life, as shown  
13    up here as opposed to the wild type, and they had  
14    improved efficiency, as you see here. These are the  
15    long-circulating phages down here, and these are the  
16    wild type, and you can see the long-circulating phages  
17    perform better in a mouse model.

18            So maybe you could screen for phages that  
19    have longer half-life. You know, short duration half-  
20    life might be kind of a generic feature of phages, but  
21    maybe it would be worthwhile to actually select for  
22    phages that, you know, you could select -- these are  
23    all mutants, right, of the long-circulating phages.  
24    So you could just select for these perhaps and have  
25    these in your arsenal, long-circulating versions of

1 other phages you know that have already worked.

2           And another issue that was brought up was  
3 the antibody response to phages. So this might be an  
4 issue that if you do repeated treatments that you're  
5 going to maybe lose efficacy or perhaps you'll need to  
6 switch phages, so if one person becomes immune to one  
7 phage and you want to treat them again, you have to  
8 use a different phage. So perhaps you want to have  
9 some idea about what the cross-reactivity, the cross-  
10 antigenicity of the phages is before you do the  
11 treatment, right, so you'll know you have serogroups  
12 A, B, C, D phages, and if you treated somebody with A  
13 and B the first time, that if you're going to treat  
14 them again, you want to use C and D types the next  
15 time.

16           So this is just a proposed work flow that we  
17 use in our lab. So we start with a bunch of phages  
18 and we use restriction digestion actually to de-  
19 duplicate. So anyone that has identical restriction  
20 patterns, we just eliminate those or just keep one.  
21 We then do these assays, and then from here you'll  
22 pick some and then do -- say such as phage cross-  
23 receptor use and then perhaps other types of  
24 characterization as well.

25           So the current outlook. So recent

1 individual cases have shown that emergency use of  
2 phages is a viable treatment option, and really the  
3 near future -- almost all phage treatment that we can  
4 see until some of the company products come online,  
5 which will probably take some time, it's all going to  
6 be these kinds of emergency basis, and so the rapid  
7 turnaround time is really going to limit what  
8 characterization you can do. But if you have a  
9 standing collection you can characterize in the  
10 background, you can be prepared, right, and you can  
11 have the phages that you're already able to turn  
12 around relatively quickly, and then, as we gather more  
13 data, we'll be able to interpret that data better, I  
14 think, as well.

15 So, with that, I'd like to thank you for  
16 your attention and take any questions.

17 (Applause.)

18 DR. CARLSON: We have a couple minutes for  
19 questions if anyone has any for Dr. Gill.

20 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Hi. Nice presentation. I  
21 have one simple question. So sometimes we see when we  
22 do selective pressure using phage the bacteria start,  
23 you know, under selective pressure, there are  
24 receptors which reduce number expressed on the surface  
25 of the bacteria and that can, you know, it's a phage

1 bacteria is also growth competition, so in that case,  
2 bacteria will start over-dominating the culture or  
3 media. So how you predict those type of situations in  
4 the actual clinical scenario?

5 DR. GILL: This is like a physiological  
6 response, right, you're talking about? Yeah, so those  
7 are really -- I mean, those are the hardest ones to  
8 get at because they're not stable, right. So we have  
9 had phages where, you know, either their resistance is  
10 physiological or they just revert really quickly as  
11 soon as you remove the phage, and it's tricky. What  
12 we've had to do -- I can tell you at least the  
13 experience of *Klebsiella*, that we've had to kind of  
14 abuse them a lot, so we'll really kind of co-culture  
15 them with the phage for a long time so that hopefully  
16 that phenotype becomes permanent, or if it's something  
17 that reverts really quickly, they can accumulate some  
18 kind of compensatory mutations that allows them to  
19 maintain it without wanting to revert instantly.

20 But, yeah, phenotypic changes, they're  
21 tough. They're tough to deal with, and I think  
22 there's still a lot about the phage host interaction  
23 that we don't know. This is kind of the Rumsfeld  
24 style like unknown unknowns, right? There are still a  
25 lot of those out there.

1                   AUDIENCE MEMBER: So sometimes it's just a  
2 simple phase variation --

3                   DR. GILL: Yeah.

4                   AUDIENCE MEMBER: -- sometimes.

5                   DR. GILL: Yeah.

6                   AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay, thanks.

7                   AUDIENCE MEMBER: I have a question about if  
8 you have a preexisting library or a set of phages that  
9 have been characterized and you get a new strain that  
10 comes in from the clinic no one's ever seen before,  
11 and you figure out that, you know, five different  
12 phages from all over your library work, do you  
13 envision a need to characterize how that specific  
14 cocktail works in the context of that specific strain  
15 in order to see efficacy? Like do you -- because if  
16 you do that every single time, you could imagine that  
17 that would be prohibitive if you're --

18                  DR. GILL: Yeah.

19                  AUDIENCE MEMBER: Do you understand what I  
20 mean?

21                  DR. GILL: Yeah. Well, I think, you know,  
22 it's hard to say when the rubber hits the road, right,  
23 how this will actually play out. I think the hope is  
24 that if you have the phage -- the phage collection is  
25 relatively well characterized, then you could do some

1 kind of simple experiments just to see if that new  
2 strain behaves like it does against the other strains  
3 you've already tested, like, for example, if it's the  
4 simple kind of virulence assays, it gives you the same  
5 kind of phenotype as it does, and maybe you could do  
6 cross-resistance assays because you can generate those  
7 mutants, it doesn't take too long, right. It's really  
8 an overnight, and you can get those and you can test  
9 them within a few days, but, again, it depends on how  
10 much of an emergency it is, right.

11 So, if you have the time, then you could do  
12 a few more confirmatory or follow-up experiments, but  
13 if you don't, I think you just -- the idea is that  
14 having that library characterized already will give  
15 you at least some assurance that it's likely to work,  
16 more likely to work than if you just picked a random  
17 phage off the street.

18 DR. KINCAID: Yeah, I was just curious  
19 whether or not you'd developed any assays that assess  
20 biofilm disruption and/or whether or not that's worth  
21 any effort?

22 DR. GILL: Yeah, that's something -- it  
23 looks like we can talk about everything. So that is  
24 another issue, biofilm disruption. So there are these  
25 kinds of standard, you know, *in vitro* biofilm assays

1 you can use and we've used those. I mean, it's just  
2 in a 96-well plate, you know, for like crystal violet  
3 staining, and so we have some phages, for example,  
4 that have the capsular depolymerase enzymes on them  
5 that will degrade the capsule, and those are a little  
6 more effective at removing biofilm, but, yeah, that  
7 could be another aspect, though, of the  
8 characterization in addition to say a standard  
9 virulence assay is to look at biofilm reduction.

10 DR. CARLSON: Okay, great. All right.  
11 Thank you.

12 DR. GILL: Thank you.

13 DR. CARLSON: So, obviously, we can have  
14 more questions at the panel later. So up next we're  
15 going to have Susan Lehman from AmpliPhi Biosciences,  
16 who's going to talk to us about CMC and other  
17 considerations for phage products.

18 DR. LEHMAN: Good afternoon. I'm going to  
19 talk about this topic today in the context of what I  
20 think is a bit of a gap between everything we know  
21 about phage biology and what we need to get us to the  
22 point of having phage therapeutic products that are  
23 accessible for a large number of people.

24 One of the biggest challenges for phage  
25 therapy apart from maybe money, I think, is

1 integrating all of the R&D expertise that exists and  
2 all of the CMC expertise that exists. Jason talked a  
3 lot about phage characterization among the data that  
4 we can collect on the research side. What's the key  
5 data coming from that R&D environment that we need to  
6 collect in order to build a robust manufacturing  
7 program and put together a CMC package that can be  
8 taken to the relevant regulatory agency to get  
9 permission to proceed into clinical trials in humans?

10           There is a ton of fantastic phage biology  
11 knowledge throughout the world, and there's also a  
12 really well-developed infrastructure for commercial  
13 antibacterial development. I think bridging that gap  
14 between those two fields of expertise is a particular  
15 challenge for phage therapy. I think the gap exists  
16 partly because there's such a long history of human  
17 phage use, and that happened largely outside of the  
18 drug development sphere, and that's put phage therapy  
19 in a bit of an unusual position relative to other  
20 novel antimicrobial classes that come to the FDA or  
21 the EMA or any of the other regulatory bodies in the  
22 early stages of development because we just simply  
23 have so much other experience and there's an  
24 underlying belief that it works, and so I think that's  
25 led to some historical tension between the knowledge

1 that we have about phages and phage therapy and the  
2 traditional drug development pathway that an  
3 antibiotic would go through.

4 But I also hope that I can finish convincing  
5 a number of people who may not be convinced already  
6 that phage therapy absolutely can fit into a  
7 traditionally regulated drug development pathway and  
8 that also the established antimicrobial development  
9 community can adapt to all the strange little ways  
10 that phages don't quite fit in. They don't quite act  
11 the same way as a small molecule drug does, and they  
12 don't even really act the same way as a non-  
13 replicating biologic. There's always some extra  
14 complications when you've got something that's self-  
15 replicating.

16 When I make that statement that phages can  
17 fit into a traditional drug development pathway, I'm  
18 basing that on AmpliPhi's experiences. We are engaged  
19 in traditional drug development programs. We have two  
20 lead products, a cocktail for *Staph aureus* and a  
21 cocktail for *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Both of them  
22 have very high coverage across the various isolates of  
23 both species that we've collected, and that's been  
24 true as we've continued to collect new isolates over  
25 time.

1           Last year, we completed two Phase I safety  
2 trials with the *Staph aureus* product, one in chronic  
3 sinusitis patients in Australia and one in healthy  
4 volunteers in the U.S. toward the skin and soft tissue  
5 infection. In both cases, the product was safe and  
6 well-tolerated in the subjects, and following those  
7 trials and some additional conversations that we've  
8 had, we are well-positioned to move that product  
9 forward into Phase II clinical trials.

10           For our *Pseudomonas* product, we are hoping  
11 to enter Phase I trials next year. We've had a  
12 successful consultation with the MHRA because our  
13 partner is there in the U.K. and are well positioned  
14 to move forward in that, with that product as well.

15           There's also been some talk about  
16 compassionate use cases. AmpliPhi has responded to  
17 physician requests to use our products and our phages  
18 under expanded use schemes, and in those scenarios,  
19 we've had interest in a number of other indications  
20 besides the infections that are listed here and things  
21 like IV administration, and we are investigating those  
22 as well.

23           So you've done all this great work with the  
24 phage characterization that Jason was talking about.  
25 You've designed a great product and what do you need

1 to get from that data into a clinical trial to a  
2 product that hopefully works and you can get  
3 regulatory approval to take to market?

4 As you move out of that R&D environment into  
5 a more regulated manufacturing, testing, and clinical  
6 environment, everything becomes quite a bit more  
7 structured. Broadly speaking, you need to scale up  
8 fermentation and purification. You need assays that  
9 you can use to monitor your process and also to  
10 monitor the final product that you get out of it. You  
11 need to figure out how you're going to formulate and  
12 deliver your drug. You need to make sure that it's  
13 going to be shelf-stable for long enough that you have  
14 a useful product, and there are industry standards  
15 that govern all of these things: things like how your  
16 biological stocks are maintained and used; how your  
17 process validation is done; the quality systems that  
18 govern all of these; what kind of claims that you can  
19 make about drug delivery and drug dosing; how you  
20 store and test stability for your products; and how  
21 you test safety before you can get permission to move  
22 forward into humans; and then, of course, once you  
23 enter clinical trials, there are a number of  
24 regulations that govern how those trials are conducted  
25 and how the data is analyzed.

1           I'm going to start by talking a little bit  
2 about the first two stones on my little stepping stone  
3 pathway. The overall message for GMP manufacturing,  
4 the underlying principle is process consistency. You  
5 need to manufacture the same thing every time, doing  
6 the same thing every time.

7           I've put up an example schematic for a  
8 hypothetical four-phage product where there are two  
9 bacteriophages that are grown in one manufacturing  
10 host and two phages grown in a second manufacturing  
11 host. There was a comment made this morning about  
12 whether you pick a manufacturing host early in  
13 development or later in development. I definitely  
14 agree with the statement that it's better to do it  
15 early.

16           You don't -- as was said this morning,  
17 bacteriophages just can behave a little bit  
18 differently based on what you've grown them in, and  
19 you certainly wouldn't want to get to the stage of  
20 manufacturing and find out, you know, switch a host  
21 and find out that all that characterization data  
22 you've so carefully collected is no longer entirely  
23 relevant to what you're about to manufacture.

24           So, having said that, you've done all that  
25 work, you've transferred your phages and manufacturing

1 hosts to two of the GMP manufacturing environment, and  
2 set up a two-tier manufacturing system. You've got  
3 master stocks that are really well-characterized,  
4 working stocks that you're going to use to make each  
5 batch, and when you've used up all your working  
6 stocks, you can go back to your master stock and make  
7 a new set of working stocks.

8           Every time you make a new batch of phage you  
9 take one of those working manufacturing host vials,  
10 one of those working viral seed vials, put them  
11 together, do your fermentation and purification  
12 processes, get your drug substance out, and mix your  
13 purified phages in known ratios to generate your drug  
14 product.

15           There are a couple of things that this does.  
16 Two of the most important ones are that it limits  
17 serial passage, so you can maintain vertical  
18 consistency between those master stocks and every  
19 batch of drug substance that you make. It's  
20 particularly important for phages because there's a  
21 replicating genome.

22           The other really important thing that isn't  
23 entirely captured by three little boxes on a screen is  
24 how important your process consistency is through this  
25 step. Every time you make a new batch of phage you

1 follow the exact same process through the  
2 fermentation, through the purification. The process  
3 might differ for different phages in your product, but  
4 for a given phage, same thing every time, and it's  
5 extensively documented.

6           Having gone through the process of setting  
7 up that manufacturing system so that you are making  
8 the same thing every time, you need analytical methods  
9 so that you can demonstrate that consistency both to  
10 yourself and to others. You can't test everything.  
11 You have to rely on the processes you've set up and  
12 you have to have designed good processes, but you can  
13 test a number of key characteristics against  
14 established criteria to give yourself the confidence  
15 that everything has gone the way you've set it up, and  
16 a lot of those assays are going to be heavily  
17 dependent on the phage characterization that you  
18 developed early and the process development data that  
19 you gathered early on.

20           So it's important to keep that in mind  
21 during the early R&D phase. I think it's really easy  
22 in a research environment to get very caught up in  
23 screening phages, picking the best phages. If you're  
24 in the genetic engineering side of things, making the  
25 best phages. But everything that you pick is

1 eventually have go through the, you know, process of  
2 controlled manufacturing and analysis, and so you do  
3 yourself a lot of favors if you think ahead to these  
4 analytical processes while you're earlier in  
5 development.

6 Part of that thinking ahead is thinking  
7 about the difference between good research analytical  
8 methods and good analytical methods for GMP  
9 manufacturing. There are a lot of good research  
10 assays that have controls, standards, they work the  
11 same way when you run them again, they measure what  
12 you think they're measuring.

13 But when you move into a GMP manufacturing  
14 environment, you have to know a lot more. You have to  
15 have much more in-depth knowledge about the assay  
16 performance both in terms of trends over time and the  
17 way that the assay functions every individual time  
18 that you run it. You don't get to decide that you're  
19 going to run a gel, an agarose gel at a slightly  
20 higher voltage for a shorter period of time because  
21 you've got somewhere to go. It's got to be the same  
22 every time.

23 I don't think I've ever worked in an  
24 academic research lab that made everyone in the lab  
25 who did plaque assays take the same tube and test it

1 multiple different days and make sure that everybody  
2 in the lab got the same number within a pretty tight  
3 margin of variability and then said, oh, the lab next  
4 door that we collaborate with or the lab two  
5 universities over that we collaborate with, we're  
6 going to give you the same samples and make sure that  
7 you get exactly the same results.

8           We make an effort in those environments to  
9 make sure that our results aren't wildly different,  
10 but we don't really put hard numbers on those kinds of  
11 things, and in a GMP manufacturing environment, we  
12 have to.

13           There are also a number of scenarios in a  
14 research and development environment where what we're  
15 doing is somewhat exploratory. You're not just  
16 interested in things that have a yes or no output. In  
17 a GMP manufacturing environment, in a quality control  
18 testing environment, you don't want that fuzzy middle.  
19 You need something that has a clear readout and it's  
20 clearly interpretable as a yes or no answer.

21           And, finally, you -- well, not finally,  
22 there are a lot of examples I haven't given, but  
23 finally for this slide, is the assay actually helpful?  
24 Can it be run in a reasonable amount of time for what  
25 you need? Are the tolerances that you put on that

1 assay tight enough to detect problems when they exist,  
2 or are they so tight that you start flagging things  
3 that you shouldn't?

4 All of that assay development and process  
5 development occurs in stages. It matures over time,  
6 and the validation level of those assays also matures  
7 over time. Some of your assays are going to be  
8 industry standards. Some of them are going to be  
9 product-specific, and the product-specific ones are  
10 likely to be the biggest challenges.

11 I'm not going to talk about all of these. I  
12 want to highlight a few. Phage concentration,  
13 obviously, a key parameter for a phage product.

14 What host are you going to test it in?  
15 There was some conversation this morning about  
16 manufacturing hosts and assay hosts that people have  
17 found were not -- they didn't work if you use the same  
18 one, so it might work if you use the same one, it  
19 might not.

20 Are you testing a single phage? Testing the  
21 concentration of a single phage is fairly  
22 straightforward. What about if you're trying to test  
23 the concentration of three or four or five or 12  
24 individual phages within a cocktail? That's a much  
25 bigger challenge. Identity and purity of your phages

1 are also obviously key. You want to make sure you've  
2 grown the phage you think you have. You haven't  
3 cross-contaminated any of your stocks.

4 How informative are the assays that you  
5 have? There are a lot of different methods available  
6 to assess phage identity and phage purity. They each  
7 have different strengths and weaknesses. Obviously,  
8 you need something that's going to differentiate among  
9 different phages. You also need something that's got  
10 the right capacity to detect a problem. PCR is great,  
11 it's fast, it has a nice, clear readout, but it's only  
12 based on a tiny section of the genome, so it's going  
13 to be useful for some kinds of assays, but it may not  
14 be useful if you're looking for changes that may occur  
15 outside of that section of the genome.

16 When it comes to removing impurities, are  
17 you at a phase of development where you have a really  
18 good idea of a couple of specific host cell proteins  
19 that your process -- that you can test for to tell if  
20 your process is working well and you've gotten good  
21 purification, or are you at a stage of development  
22 where you need to look more generally at bigger  
23 picture of what's going on in your purification?

24 If you're talking about endotoxin, how you  
25 plan to administer the phage product is going to

1 determine what your acceptable endotoxin limits are.

2           With microbial contamination, there are  
3 established test methods for bacterial burden and for  
4 sterility. That's good when you need to test that,  
5 but you also should think about where in the process  
6 you might have contamination occurring. Maybe there  
7 are points in your manufacturing process where it  
8 would be beneficial to do a risk-based assessment of  
9 what the likely problems are to arise, and so you can  
10 test as you go along for some of those most likely  
11 events and reduce the risk that you're going to get to  
12 the end of your process and have something that fails,  
13 fails a quality assessment, and you could have found  
14 out before you spent the time and money going through  
15 the whole thing. You could have found out early on  
16 that there was a problem with that batch.

17           The next three stepping stones on my little  
18 graphic are here. There's a ton of things to think  
19 about just in terms of the practicalities of  
20 developing phage products. There are guidelines that  
21 govern a lot of these, things like stability testing  
22 and device qualification if you're going to use a  
23 delivery device. I want to use this to give you a  
24 specific example of the ways in which a lot of these  
25 things can get more complicated than you initially

1 predict.

2 Our Phase I trial on rhinosinusitis patients  
3 administered the phage as part of a sinus wash. It  
4 was a sinus wash that's used as part of the standard  
5 of care for CRS patients, and they have about a cup of  
6 water and they dissolve a little saline pouch into it  
7 and run it through their sinuses in both directions,  
8 and we thought we'll put the phage product in the  
9 sinus wash. It seems really simple, and you think,  
10 okay, let's make sure that the saline, you know,  
11 components don't interfere with phage viability.

12 What about the water? Most patients use  
13 boiled tap water, municipal tap water to prepare that  
14 saline wash. The municipal tap water where we were  
15 going to run the trial, boy, even after you boil it,  
16 it's not so good for the viability of that phage  
17 product.

18 So, in that trial, we ended up providing  
19 every subject with a case of water that we knew would  
20 have no problems and they took that home with them.  
21 We did all the testing in advance, so we knew that we  
22 needed to do that, but it's a level of -- it's that  
23 extra level of testing for compatibility that you need  
24 to think of throughout these processes, and it takes  
25 time.

1           Clinical trials and clinical development in  
2           general are hard. They get harder when you add  
3           phages. Assuming you've picked a good infection  
4           target that matches phage biology really well, you've  
5           got a plan for your clinical trial progression that's  
6           going to get you to the indication that you're  
7           targeting, and you have a sufficient patient  
8           population to enroll those trials in a reasonable  
9           amount of time, what are you going to measure? Is  
10          your primary end point clinical? Is it  
11          microbiological? If it's microbiological, do you have  
12          a threshold for success versus failure?

13                 Do you need new assays? Sometimes the  
14          infrastructure that's available in clinical  
15          microbiology labs aren't going to be equipped to  
16          handle phage-specific assays particularly well because  
17          they simply don't work with it. They're not used to  
18          it. So, if you have to qualify a new assay and  
19          potentially qualify a new lab, if it's a multi-center  
20          trial, are you going to try and qualify multiple labs  
21          at all of the sites, or are you going to look into  
22          centralized testing?

23                 You made it through all of this. Before you  
24          can get permission that it's safe to proceed into  
25          humans, you need to submit all of that collected data

1 to the relevant regulatory authority. In the U.S.,  
2 this is done under an Investigational New Drug  
3 application, or an IND. Different countries have  
4 different requirements, but the general structure is  
5 similar. You present your overall plan. An  
6 investigator's brochure communicates your core product  
7 and quality characteristics to the physicians and also  
8 to the institutional committees that are responsible  
9 for approving the trial, and all of the non-clinical  
10 data and all of the quality information from your  
11 manufacturing come together in that as well.

12 The structure of these elements will change  
13 over time. As you move through clinical development,  
14 you obviously acquire more clinical data, but the  
15 general structure is there, and the FDA, the elements  
16 to this aren't a secret. The FDA and the ICH have  
17 lots of really detailed information online about  
18 exactly what goes into all of them.

19 So, to end, I think my message here is that  
20 you can -- I mean, our experience so far certainly has  
21 been that you can fit phage development into industry  
22 standard processes, and a lot of times through this I  
23 was making reference to the fact that there are  
24 industry standards for X. I think a lot of times in  
25 the phage therapy community we tend to view those

1 industry standards and requirements as a hurdle, and I  
2 don't believe we need to see them that way.

3 Certainly, requirements that need to be met,  
4 and that takes time and effort and money. They're  
5 also the things that are going to let us treat a  
6 number of people to make phage therapy available to a  
7 large number of people.

8 There was a comment earlier this morning  
9 that the kind of really intensive, focused effort  
10 that's required for a compassionate use case isn't  
11 necessarily sustainable. The way we can make phage  
12 treatment sustainable is through this kind of approval  
13 pathway, to fit them into the drug development  
14 pathways that exist, and the good news in a lot of  
15 ways is that all of this, all of the infrastructure  
16 for this, does exist from the antibiotic world. There  
17 are ways that we need to fit phages into that and  
18 there are some specific challenges associated with  
19 that, but there's also a lot of CMC expertise out  
20 there that we can use and we can use to our benefit.

21 I promised I'd talk a little bit about some  
22 of the expanded access use for products as well. Our  
23 tendency so far has been to use GMP products when  
24 possible, and because the products that we have have  
25 such high coverage across different strains of the

1 species that they target, we think that it's quite  
2 feasible to use GMP products in a number of cases or  
3 at least a GMP-like version of those products.

4 In situations where GMP material isn't  
5 possible or isn't available, we still believe that  
6 non-GMP material can and should meet very high  
7 standards. When it comes to key attributes, such as  
8 understanding that, you know, phages are lytic, having  
9 really well-documented evidence of your product  
10 quality, using purification methods that are  
11 appropriate to develop material for human use, doing  
12 microbiological testing, handling things in a  
13 controlled way, a lot of the way that these attributes  
14 get handled in a non-GMP product may be a little bit  
15 different from the way they're handled in a GMP  
16 product, but we can still meet high standards of  
17 quality for those.

18 My message for today has been that the phage  
19 biology expertise that exists in the phage community  
20 is absolutely compatible with a drug development  
21 pathway. There are a lot of exciting conversations  
22 that I think are being had about additional ways to  
23 look at this. The concept of phage libraries is a  
24 really good one to talk about, and I think that having  
25 some development through some of the traditional

1 pathways is going to help move those conversations  
2 forward, which was mentioned this morning.

3 We have a lot to learn as we all move  
4 forward, and I'm very grateful to the FDA and the NIH  
5 for continuing to organize this workshop because I  
6 think we've gotten a lot of useful discussion and will  
7 continue to over the rest of today and tomorrow.

8 I think I have time for one question.

9 (Applause.)

10 DR. CARLSON: So we can take a few  
11 questions. We started a couple minutes late.

12 AUDIENCE MEMBER: So a nice presentation.  
13 So my question, specific question is that whatever you  
14 presented here is good for a fixed cocktail model.  
15 But if you are a dynamic, you know, phage library and  
16 you want to make a product out of it because we know  
17 from my experience a fixed cocktail model is not going  
18 to work all the time because the resistance for the  
19 phage is pretty often because the phage-bacterial  
20 interaction happen more randomly than the antibiotic,  
21 mainly the fungal products, and the bacteria.

22 So, in that environment, today's fixed  
23 cocktail will not work tomorrow's bacteria. So how  
24 you address this question, how you?

25 DR. LEHMAN: I think there are a couple of

1 pieces to that answer. One of the things that we've  
2 found with the cocktails that are predesigned that we  
3 have is that they have been very broadly active, and  
4 in terms of, you know, when you go and collect  
5 clinical isolates every couple of years, new clinical  
6 isolates every couple of years, they've maintained  
7 pretty broad activity.

8           The inherent frequency of resistance is  
9 pretty low, and you also have -- so you have a lot of  
10 cases where those are going to be useful. In cases  
11 when they're not, we are open to -- we want to have  
12 the discussions about whether having very well-  
13 characterized libraries of phages has a -- basically  
14 whether there's a way to fit that into an FDA-  
15 regulated system, and certainly, as I've indicated,  
16 we've been involved in some compassionate use cases  
17 where there's -- where permission to use something  
18 that's less well-characterized is easy to get.

19           I think there's also some difference to keep  
20 in mind between species. *Staph aureus* is probably a  
21 lot easier to hit with a defined cocktail in more  
22 cases because the organism itself is more homogenous.  
23 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, you start to get into an  
24 organism that's a little more genetically diverse, and  
25 you get to something like *Acinetobacter baumannii* and

1 that's even harder.

2           So I wouldn't want to get scared off by the  
3 challenges of *Acinetobacter* when we're looking at  
4 something like *Staph*. I think we need to talk in a  
5 very context-dependent way about the need for  
6 additional -- the need for, I guess, the relative  
7 utility of those pre-defined cocktails because there  
8 are a lot of cases where they think they are going to  
9 be very useful. At least that's been our experience  
10 with the data that we have.

11           AUDIENCE MEMBER: I basically wanted to ask  
12 the same question as him, but the data you have where  
13 you continue to see efficacy even when there's new  
14 clinical isolates emerge, are you doing that in animal  
15 models or are you doing that *in vitro*?

16           DR. LEHMAN: The bulk of it is *in vitro*  
17 because you can simply test so much more.

18           AUDIENCE MEMBER: But one would have to --  
19 not to be belligerent, but one would have to consider  
20 that *in vivo* -- I mean, even manufacturing strains  
21 matter. So, if you shift the center of your  
22 population away from optimization to the target, it  
23 could be that *in vivo* that's -- or, sorry -- *in vitro*  
24 it's undetectable because diffusion is controlled in a  
25 liquid broth, for example.

1           But when you put that into an organism with  
2           an active immune system and CRPs and three dimensions,  
3           you might not see the same efficacy downstream and you  
4           might get different kinds of resistance emerging in an  
5           animal that's also adding selection pressures of its  
6           own vice a context where you're just in the broth.  
7           Does that make sense to you?

8           DR. LEHMAN: Yeah, yeah, and I think  
9           everyone agrees you can't do quite as much testing in  
10          an *in vivo* system as you can do in an *in vitro* system,  
11          and I think the testing that gets done in an *in vitro*  
12          system in that capacity needs to be chosen pretty  
13          carefully. For example, a mouse model is only going  
14          to support a certain size bacterial population, so  
15          there's only so much of that that may be informative  
16          in a mouse. But as you get to bigger and bigger  
17          animals, you can do even less.

18          So that's one of the areas that  
19          compassionate use cases may help us to understand a  
20          little better. It may help us to define the questions  
21          a little better because a human has -- it's --  
22          ultimately our question is what is it going to do in a  
23          human being, and as we collect some data from a lot of  
24          these cases, we're going to have a better sense of  
25          what those questions are, which may let us go back and

1 do some more focused *in vivo* testing in animal systems  
2 as well.

3 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Coming to the *in vivo*  
4 question, one of the biggest challenges that we have  
5 in antimicrobial development, and certainly it'll  
6 apply to bacteriophage is in our patients how much to  
7 give and how long to give it. So, while in  
8 antimicrobial development we have very recently well-  
9 defined strategies and pathways to arrive at the  
10 PK/PD, what pre-clinical animal model systems PK/PD  
11 analysis do you do to be able to know how much to give  
12 and how long to give?

13 DR. LEHMAN: That's a real challenge. A lot  
14 of traditional PK/PD is done in uninfected animals,  
15 and that's not going to tell you the same things in  
16 phages that it will tell you with a small molecule  
17 drug because the dosing changes and the way that the  
18 phage can hide from biological clearance mechanisms  
19 changes when a susceptible bacterial population is  
20 present.

21 AUDIENCE MEMBER: For example, in the wound  
22 models that you have and in the implant, we do have  
23 animal model systems for those. Were they developed  
24 in order to -- and explored in order to know again how  
25 much to give, how long to give?

1 DR. LEHMAN: In most cases not. Figuring  
2 out how to do proper PK/PD for phage therapy is a huge  
3 unknown and I think it's something that's understudied  
4 in the field in general, and we've got a lot to learn  
5 when it comes to figuring that out, and some of the  
6 work that Dr. Górski has been doing and his colleagues  
7 in Poland looking at what kind of antibody responses  
8 exist and how those antibody responses correlate to  
9 clinical outcomes has been valuable, and I think, you  
10 know, as companies go through controlled clinical  
11 trials, we have a lot to build on in that specific  
12 area. Or, I'm sorry, we have a lot to build up in  
13 that specific area.

14 DR. CARLSON: So we can continue with  
15 questions along these lines in the discussion session  
16 later and I guarantee we'll talk about phage,  
17 personalized phage therapy there. It keeps coming up  
18 in, I think, just about every talk, so I promise we'll  
19 come back to it at the panel discussion.

20 So up next we have Scott Stibitz from FDA  
21 CBER, who's going to talk to us about regulatory  
22 pathways and CMC considerations for bacteriophage  
23 products.

24 DR. STIBITZ: Great. Thank you. This is  
25 the point where I would normally thank the organizers

1 for inviting me, but instead I will thank all the  
2 other organizers for their hard work and for the CBER  
3 staff and NIAID staff, who have just done a fantastic  
4 job getting this all together.

5 So this talk constitutes what we kind of  
6 sometimes refer to as regulatory outreach, and when I  
7 was younger and more foolish, I said I would never  
8 ever give a regulatory talk, but I've now given quite  
9 a few and I actually really like them because it gives  
10 us a chance to sort of set the record straight in a  
11 way to really give accurate information. We often  
12 hear people talking about the FDA and what we think  
13 and what we'll allow and what we won't allow, and  
14 sometimes it takes us by surprise.

15 In terms of phage therapy, the most  
16 pervasive is -- which is stated over and over again --  
17 FDA will never allow phage therapy. So I also have to  
18 just throw this disclaimer up here to let you know  
19 that my comments will not bind or obligate the FDA.

20 So, just to kind of address off the starting  
21 block some of these misconceptions, I put together a  
22 few points that address some of these issues we've  
23 heard.

24 So one is, you know, does CBER FDA have a  
25 history of regulating novel products and treatment

1 modalities, in other words, weird stuff? And the fact  
2 is, yes, we do. I think the most recent example of  
3 that would be fecal transplants.

4 Are clinical trials on phage therapy  
5 proceeding under FDA oversight? Well, I can give the  
6 positive answer yes, but only because those have been  
7 publicized by the companies involved. Otherwise, I  
8 would not be able to make that statement.

9 Similarly, we do allow compassionate use of  
10 phage therapy. Our preferred term is "expanded  
11 access," but I can kind of tell it's a losing battle.

12 (Laughter.)

13 DR. STIBITZ: So are there new and  
14 challenging aspects to clinical trial design?  
15 Absolutely. Are there novel CMC challenges or  
16 considerations? Yes. Does the FDA actually in-house  
17 have research projects on phage therapy? That is also  
18 true. A story for another day.

19 And so what I think all this adds up to is I  
20 hope that you are convinced and I think everything  
21 I've heard so far today and what you'll hear tomorrow  
22 is that the FDA does not have a preexisting negative  
23 position towards phage therapy.

24 So a brief outline. I want to talk about  
25 who at FDA is responsible for regulating phage

1 therapy, if we could put a face on the monolith, a  
2 brief overview of regulatory procedures, and then talk  
3 about CMC issues that may be special relative to  
4 phage.

5 So to the first. FDA contains many centers.  
6 I've thrown up some here. This is not a comprehensive  
7 list, but we are in the Center for Biologics  
8 Evaluation and Research. It occurred to me as I was  
9 looking at my slides today actually each of these  
10 other centers probably will have some interaction with  
11 us or something to say about phage therapy as well.

12 So we're the Center for Biologics. It's  
13 natural to ask the question what's a biologic. In  
14 almost all cases, a biologic is also a drug, but  
15 here's a definition from the Public Health Service  
16 Act, but the most critical statement in here is, and  
17 this echoes the definition of a drug, is that it's  
18 applicable to the prevention, treatment, or cure of a  
19 disease or condition of human beings.

20 So, within CBER, we are within the Office of  
21 Vaccines Research and Review, as has already been  
22 pointed out, and there are three divisions. The  
23 division in the middle here is Vaccine and Related  
24 Product Applications. They are the people who really  
25 manage the files, communicate with the sponsors, and

1 coordinate the reviews. The reviews include in almost  
2 all cases -- I mean, sorry -- in all cases I would  
3 have to say product review, and that's done in the  
4 divisions that actually do laboratory research. So  
5 those of us in those divisions, we have labs, we do  
6 experiments, and then we also do product review.  
7 And within DVRPA we have clinical review and, as  
8 needed, toxicology reviews and also, as needed,  
9 statistical reviews or quite often consults with other  
10 divisions that might have, for example, clinical  
11 expertise.

12 Okay. So when in product development does  
13 the FDA get involved? As many of you are aware, this  
14 is first in-human use. When that happens, it's  
15 supposed to be done under IND. That has at least two  
16 effects. One is that it's done under our supervision  
17 with our advice, but it has a legal ramification, is  
18 that it allows use of an otherwise illegal product in  
19 interstate commerce or in clinical trials. So the IND  
20 is basically an exemption from having to use a  
21 licensed product. But it's also important to remember  
22 that not all INDs are for product development. We get  
23 some that would be called research-only studies, I  
24 think, by most people.

25 So this is kind of a summary of the whole

1 picture. I want to spend a little time talking about  
2 it. We have the phases of IND research here, and the  
3 boundaries between these can sometimes be somewhat  
4 mobile. Certainly, many studies would span Phase I,  
5 Phase II or Phase II, Phase III, but the important  
6 aspect here is that through the IND process it's  
7 basically progressive implementation.

8 I have broken it down into three aspects  
9 here. One is effectiveness. So the trials that  
10 you're doing, Phase I, for example, could be simply  
11 safety. Phase II could be preliminary evidence of  
12 efficacy, and then Phase III, of course, is your  
13 pivotal clinical trial, collecting the data to support  
14 a license application.

15 Similarly, manufacturing consistency. In  
16 the beginning, it could be quite simple. During this  
17 process, there may be changes made to the product,  
18 dosing might be altered, dosing or formulation, but by  
19 the time you get to Phase III and are ready for your  
20 clinical trial this should be basically set.

21 Similarly for assay developments. The, you  
22 know, assays in Phase I should be basically  
23 scientifically sound. By Phase II, you start to think  
24 about qualifying, and by Phase III, assays to be used  
25 in the pivotal trial should be fully validated.

1           And then, if all goes well, license  
2 application leads to an FDA license, and, of course,  
3 that's not set in stone. BLA supplements after the  
4 license can be used to change things as long as it's  
5 not too terribly drastic, but there can be some  
6 changes to the product. There can be changes in  
7 manufacturing. There could be clinical studies to  
8 support a different dose or a different indication,  
9 changes in the manufacturing equipment, et cetera, et  
10 cetera.

11           And then I'll talk again about this more,  
12 but leading into all this, especially for people that  
13 don't have a lot of experience, we have opportunities  
14 to meet in what's called a pre-IND meeting.

15           So one of the things that I like to tell  
16 people because the term "CGMP" strikes fear in the  
17 heart of many would-be IND sponsors is that GMP is not  
18 GMP, is not GMP. In other words, what people think of  
19 as a GMP lot fully validated, you know, all the things  
20 that you think of when people say, oh, well, we need  
21 to get a GMP lot to begin studies. In fact, GMP in  
22 Phase I is not as rigorous, and so I've quoted this  
23 guidance which is out there. The approach described  
24 in this guidance reflects the fact that some  
25 manufacturing controls and the extent of manufacturing

1 controls needed to achieve appropriate product quality  
2 differ not only between investigational and commercial  
3 manufacture but also among the various phases of  
4 clinical trials, and boiled down, this means that for  
5 Phase I, CGMP is not required to be as extensive as  
6 for later phases or for an approved product.

7 Who sponsors biologics INDs? Big companies,  
8 small companies, individual bench researchers,  
9 individual clinical investigators, and other agency.  
10 And so the point that I'm trying to make here is that  
11 the regulatory expertise and regulatory support that's  
12 available to sponsors varies greatly, and this is why  
13 at critical points the opportunity exists and it's  
14 highly recommended to meet with us, for example, prior  
15 to submission as in a pre-IND or prior to pivotal  
16 studies, license application, et cetera, and this is  
17 where we really work out a lot of the details.

18 And just to reprise this slide to make this  
19 point that because biologics are so different from one  
20 another we can't have, you know, kind of clearly  
21 prospective milestones that will apply to all products  
22 and that, you know, the sliding scale or progressive  
23 implementation, the milestones on that are arrived at  
24 through conversations between the sponsor and the FDA.

25 Again, pre-IND meetings. The stated purpose

1 of these as per this guidance that's shown here is to  
2 discuss CMC issues as they relate to primarily safety  
3 of an investigational new drug proposed for use in  
4 clinical studies, and the way this works, some of you  
5 will have done this and are familiar, but the sponsor  
6 poses questions, provides a description of the CMC.

7 This is a case where you get out of it what  
8 you put into it. So the more detail that you can give  
9 us about where you are in product development, how  
10 much information you have, and what your real  
11 questions are to us, the more you will get out of it.

12 And so what happens is that CBER assembles a  
13 full review team, so that would be product, clinical,  
14 toxicology if indicated, statistically possibly at an  
15 early stage, and we do a full review of what you have  
16 submitted. This is good for everybody. It's good for  
17 the sponsor because they get a much better and clearer  
18 idea of what we're asking for. It's good for us  
19 because, when the IND actually comes in, the review is  
20 much more straightforward, and it's good for both of  
21 us because fewer studies go on clinical hold.

22 And so, if all goes well, the ultimate goal  
23 is an FDA license. For a product to be licensed, that  
24 requires three things: that it be shown to be safe  
25 and effective and able to be manufactured

1 consistently. And, again, the details of what a  
2 safety database would look like or what the  
3 demonstration of effectiveness is in any particular  
4 case will be based on the nature of the product and  
5 our discussions.

6 So, finally, just to get to some more phage-  
7 specific stuff, I tried to organize this around  
8 unique, as I see them, aspects of bacteriophage, all  
9 of which have been touched on already and will be.  
10 But phage are incredibly diverse. They're highly  
11 specific. They mediate genetic transfer. They're  
12 antigenic. They're generally assumed not to interact  
13 with human cells, and as part of that, there's  
14 basically a high expectation of safety.

15 So just to go into some of these one by one.  
16 Now some of these have positive aspects and some have  
17 not so positive aspects. In terms of diversity for  
18 many bacterial hosts, and again I think the dogma that  
19 there are billions of phage out there for any bug may  
20 be not so true for all bugs. I mean, certainly, Ry  
21 talked this morning about how *Staph* phage seem to have  
22 been dominated by the K-like phages, and I think Andy  
23 Camilli's work has shown that there is really a very  
24 small number of cholera phage out there, but this is a  
25 concept that we work with, that there are lots of

1 phage out there and it should be possible to find new  
2 phage. So I put inexhaustible in quotes because maybe  
3 it's not inexhaustible, but it's a big supply of  
4 natural products.

5 But the downside of diversity is that every  
6 bacteriophage-bacterial host pair is unique, and so it  
7 is, in fact, problematic to draw a priority or general  
8 conclusions, either good or bad, about phage in  
9 general from specific examples.

10 Specificity of phage, these will generally  
11 be pathogen-specific treatments, which raises a whole  
12 new issue when it comes to clinical trial design,  
13 which our next speaker will be speaking of. Now the  
14 good thing is that we expect less disruption to the  
15 microbiota, as has been stated. But it also, as has  
16 been stated, will usually require identification or  
17 diagnosis of the agent prior to treatment.

18 We generally talk only in terms of receptor  
19 actions, interactions, as dictating specificity, and  
20 in that regard, as was presented very nicely by Jason,  
21 there's a future for using receptor identification to  
22 inform cocktail composition, to avoid the issue of  
23 resistance to all phage in a cocktail simultaneously.  
24 But I just want to plant a seed that receptor is not  
25 the only source of specificity, and in work in our

1 lab, it looks like both gene expression and  
2 replication may be playing a role in that as well.

3 Bacteriophage are immunogenic. An adaptive  
4 response is likely. This may limit the length of use  
5 or re-use, but not that much is really known about  
6 this in clearly defined studies. I was extremely  
7 interested to hear all that Dr. Górski had to say on  
8 this, and I think that they're really getting at a lot  
9 of these issues, but I took away from that it's not as  
10 dire as it seems. I mean, in some cases, it does not  
11 appear to limit their therapeutic use. But it's also  
12 unclear at this point, I think, what safety concerns  
13 arise from immunogenicity. I'll leave it at that.

14 Okay. And so one of the most unique aspects  
15 of bacteriophage is the fact that they mediate genetic  
16 transfer. So those genes can be transferred.  
17 Transfer may be part of the phage genome itself. This  
18 is what's called lysogenic conversion, and the phage  
19 itself contains genes for antibiotic resistance,  
20 virulent factors, what have you. There are many, many  
21 examples of this out there.

22 So that by integrating its genome into the  
23 genome of the host, those genes now become part of the  
24 genome of the host, so special abilities often in  
25 terms of resistance or pathogenicity, should I say

1 virulence are bestowed.

2           The other way is by what's called  
3 transduction, and this is where phage particles move  
4 genes between hosts. There are generally recognized  
5 to be two kinds: generalized, in which all  
6 chromosomal markers of the host organism are  
7 transduced with equal frequency, and the other is  
8 specialized, and this refers only to lysogenic phage  
9 where once having integrated, imprecise excision will  
10 lead to phage particles that now carry genes that were  
11 close to the insertion site. And so, by restricting  
12 our use to non-lysogenic phage, we really get rid of  
13 two of these concerns and are left with that of  
14 generalized transduction.

15           So, just to make sure that we're all on the  
16 same page, generalized transduction refers to the fact  
17 that some bacteriophage when they infect a cell create  
18 new copies of themselves and then start to package  
19 that into phage heads, will sometimes pick up a copy  
20 or a hunk of host DNA. Those particles, so this  
21 lysate coming out of this infection would have  
22 infectious particles, wild type phage, but also these  
23 transducing particles, which will contain a hunk of  
24 the host genome. Those particles are not infectious,  
25 but they can adsorb and inject their DNA and have it

1 incorporated into the genome recipient bacteria.

2           So what are some ways that you can look at  
3 this? A microbiology approach would be to do a  
4 transduction assay. Simply take your phage, you  
5 propagate it on a bacterial strain that contains a  
6 selectable marker, such as antibiotic-resistance. You  
7 just take that transducing lysate or potentially  
8 transducing lysate, apply it to an antibiotic-  
9 sensitive strain and plate on media containing  
10 antibiotics. If the phage is capable of transducing  
11 that marker, you should be able to detect it.

12           From a molecular biology standpoint, one can  
13 just take your phage lysate and examine it using more  
14 sensitive techniques perhaps for the presence of host  
15 genes. So PCR can be used for that or you could even  
16 deep sequence.

17           For lysogeny, and Jason made basically the  
18 same points, look at your plaques. Dogma has it if  
19 they're turbid it's lysogenic, but if they're clear  
20 they're virulent. He mentioned exceptions that are  
21 turbid yet virulent, and we have examples of ones that  
22 are clear yet lysogenic. But what you do is you pick  
23 bacteria from the center. You see if any bacteria in  
24 that battleground are still alive. One of the ways  
25 they could be alive is if they're lysogens and

1       therefore phage-resistant, and then you test those for  
2       release of phage, either spontaneous or after chemical  
3       induction.

4               Most people that I ask how do you decide  
5       your phage is lysogenic or not, they say just look at  
6       the sequence. So they've obviously done the genomic  
7       sequence and analyzed for the presence of repressors,  
8       homology to other known lysogenic phage, and any  
9       indicators of lysogenic lifestyle, and you could have  
10      a hybrid approach where you take some of these  
11      survivors and then you determine that DNA sequence of  
12      a putative lysogen and see the phage as an insertion.  
13      That's an approach we've taken recently.

14             So the current consensus, I think I'm safe  
15      in saying that, I hear these echoed over and over, of  
16      what type of characterization do we want for phage for  
17      therapy. In terms of the phage phenotypes itself,  
18      non-lysogenic, non-transducing. For the phage  
19      genotypes which could be assessed by DNA sequence  
20      analysis, free of undesirable genes, such as  
21      antibiotic-resistance and virulence factors, and the  
22      phage preparations should be pure and sterile and, we  
23      believe, low endotoxin, although we're having an  
24      interesting discussion about that.

25             Phage cocktails have generally been proposed

1 to increase the spectrum of treatment, in other words,  
2 against more strains of a given organism, but also to  
3 avoid resistance, and regulatory implications are that  
4 each phage should have relevant activity. In other  
5 words, you don't just throw the stuff in there for  
6 good measure. Potency tests should address each phage  
7 in the cocktail, and stability testing, likewise,  
8 should assess each phage in a cocktail. Future  
9 inclusion of additional or replacement phage should be  
10 supported by CMC information.

11 And then, finally, other things that would  
12 be nice to have but I don't think are going to be  
13 requirements, and all of these have been referred to,  
14 so I'll just mention them. The idea of stealth, this  
15 is from the Merril and Adhya work showing that mutants  
16 could exist in circulation longer; from Andy Camilli's  
17 work, a nice example of using virulence factors as  
18 receptors so that resistant mutants are less virulent;  
19 and then, of course, the nice story about the MDR  
20 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* treated under compassionate  
21 use, which actually used antibiotic-resistant proteins  
22 as a receptor. And, again, this is something I think  
23 we have an ongoing discussion about, but possibly  
24 being able to propagate on non-lysogenic, non-  
25 pathogenic, non-antibiotic-resistant hosts.

1           So, finally, last slide, almost on time, this  
2           is a feel good slide. FDA is committed to  
3           facilitating the testing of phage therapy in clinical  
4           trials. We do not feel that, and hope that you do  
5           not, the FDA regulatory review presents an obstacle to  
6           the assessment of safety and efficacy of phage  
7           therapy. We believe that regulatory officials,  
8           scientists, and product development developers have  
9           shared goals and need to work together and to do that  
10          communication is vital, and as investigations begin,  
11          meeting with the FDA early is highly recommended.

12                 Some resources which I will distribute  
13           because you can't write them down. Just wanted to  
14           thank my group and two people there in particular,  
15           Sheila Dreher-Lesnick and Roger Plaut, who helped me  
16           the most with the slides, and Roger with many, many  
17           other aspects of this workshop, and then all the other  
18           folks who were involved in practice sessions. So  
19           thank you very much.

20                         (Applause.)

21           DR. CARLSON: We can take a couple questions  
22           for Scott before we have a break. You're on.

23           AUDIENCE MEMBER: Thanks, that was really  
24           nice. I agree we're all in it together and we should  
25           try the best we can.

1                   You know, we haven't heard anything about  
2 RNA phages, and I'm wondering from your standpoint are  
3 they just off the table because you're worried about  
4 high mutation rate or just what you're thinking on  
5 that?

6                   DR. STIBITZ: I don't think anything's off  
7 the table. They haven't come up that I'm aware of as  
8 people isolate phage that they think have the  
9 characteristics for phage therapy.

10                  AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yeah, I think it has a lot  
11 of potential and people just don't bother to look.

12                  DR. STIBITZ: Right. I mean, we will if  
13 those come on the scene and people are proposing to  
14 use them, we'll look at them.

15                  AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yeah, your statement about  
16 the transduction is what reminded me because you don't  
17 really have to worry about the transduction if you're  
18 dealing with an RNA phage. But, okay. Thanks.

19                  DR. STIBITZ: Fair point. Do you know of  
20 any that are in the running? Really? Okay. Can't  
21 wait to hear about that. Yes?

22                  AUDIENCE MEMBER: All right. Simple  
23 question.

24                  DR. STIBITZ: Sure.

25                  AUDIENCE MEMBER: Does OVRP regulate

1 genetically modified bacteriophages, or will that go  
2 over to the gene therapy group?

3 DR. STIBITZ: Sure. I mean, in the extent  
4 that there will be among the phage that we will be  
5 regulating I'm certain genetically engineered phage.

6 AUDIENCE MEMBER: But will you share it with  
7 the gene therapy reviewers in the other office? They  
8 changed their name.

9 DR. STIBITZ: Well, I think we have ongoing  
10 discussions about who best to perform those reviews.

11 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay. So --

12 DR. STIBITZ: I thought you were going to  
13 ask the question, which is does a flag go up because  
14 they're genetically modified.

15 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Well, that is the indirect  
16 question, yes. I mean, this is the primary lead.

17 DR. STIBITZ: So we don't review them from  
18 the aspect of being GMOs or genetically engineered. I  
19 think we review based on the unique characteristics  
20 that that modification provides, not because as a  
21 class they're genetically modified --

22 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay.

23 DR. STIBITZ: -- if that makes sense. I'm  
24 not going to say they're the same as the wild type  
25 because clearly they've been modified, but we would be

1 reviewing what the effect of those modifications was.

2 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay. But who would  
3 review them from a clinical perspective then?

4 DR. STIBITZ: Beg your pardon?

5 AUDIENCE MEMBER: From a clinical, the  
6 clinical study perspective.

7 DR. STIBITZ: Are you asking if they have  
8 been used?

9 AUDIENCE MEMBER: No. I'm asking would OVRR  
10 take the lead or would the --

11 DR. STIBITZ: Well, like I said, those are  
12 discussions that are ongoing as to --

13 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay.

14 DR. STIBITZ: Currently, OVRR is doing the  
15 phage therapy.

16 AUDIENCE MEMBER: All right.

17 DR. STIBITZ: If there are indications that  
18 we would expand that, that will come.

19 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay. Thank you.

20 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Hi, Scott, another clear,  
21 positive speech. I think all the talk is -- I think  
22 it's referring to let's say pharmaceutical products.  
23 Now, if phages used together with a device, how that  
24 going to be reviewed, and if phages is going to be  
25 used in the hospital for hard service disinfectant,

1 how that going to be reviewed?

2 DR. STIBITZ: So I believe what you're  
3 talking about is a combination product, for example,  
4 where phage might be embedded in a matrix of some  
5 sort.

6 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Uh-huh.

7 DR. STIBITZ: Right. So those aspects --  
8 the matrix itself, which would probably be considered  
9 a medical device, I believe there are biocompatibility  
10 studies that has to be done as part of that, and then  
11 we would collaborate with CDRH, Center for Devices, on  
12 review of that product.

13 AUDIENCE MEMBER: The last bit. If it's  
14 used as a disinfectant, how's that going to be  
15 reviewed?

16 DR. STIBITZ: Disinfectant like on surfaces  
17 in a hospital?

18 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yeah.

19 DR. STIBITZ: That's a good one. I'll have  
20 to think about that. We are almost exclusively  
21 concerned with human studies, so it's not clear -- I  
22 mean, clearly, that would not require human study.  
23 Exactly what part of FDA would deal with that, it's  
24 not clear to me. But you're aware, of course, that  
25 CFSAN, the Center for Food Safety and Applied

1 Nutrition, has approved phage for use on meats and  
2 fish to decontaminate, but that's a little bit  
3 different.

4 DR. CARLSON: All right. So that's all the  
5 time we have for this session. We're going to take a  
6 quick break. I'm going to say we'll come back at 3  
7 because we're running a little behind. If you have  
8 questions for Scott, you can obviously come ask him  
9 now, but we'll get back to all these topics during the  
10 discussion panel later.

11 (Whereupon, a short recess was taken.)

12 DR. CARLSON: Everybody, we're going to try  
13 and get started again, if you can take your seats.

14 (Pause.)

15 DR. CARLSON: Okay. We're going to continue  
16 with the FDA presenters. Next up is Doran Fink, also  
17 from CBER, a clinical reviewer, is going to talk about  
18 regulatory considerations for clinical evaluation of  
19 phage products.

20 DR. FINK: All right. Who's ready for some  
21 more regulatory talks?

22 (Chorus of no's and applause.)

23 DR. FINK: Yeah. Is everyone recaffeinated?  
24 Good to go? Okay.

25 So the usual FDA disclaimer. My comments

1 are an informal communication and represent my own  
2 best judgment, not Scott's judgment, that was his  
3 talk. This is my own best judgment, and, of course,  
4 what I say does not bind or obligate the FDA.

5 And, actually, as I've been listening to the  
6 talks throughout the day today, I've realized that  
7 pretty much everything I'm going to talk about has  
8 already been covered, so I might as well just skip to  
9 the summary slides. No.

10 (Laughter.)

11 DR. FINK: I'll throw in a few bits of  
12 wisdom or maybe not so much wisdom from the clinical  
13 regulatory perspective. So I'm going to start out  
14 just with a few introductory slides about key  
15 variables and overlying regulatory principles for  
16 phage therapy. The bulk of the talk will be about  
17 considerations for clinical development under IND and  
18 licensure of phage therapy products. I'll talk a  
19 little bit about personalized phage therapy in this  
20 section as well. And then I'll end with some  
21 discussion and some additional information about  
22 compassionate use of phage therapy products under our  
23 expanded access IND mechanism.

24 So these are not an exhaustive list of  
25 variables that are relevant to phage therapy products

1 that have been discussed, some in great detail during  
2 previous talks, so you can think about phage therapy  
3 in terms of spectrum of activity, whether you're  
4 talking about defined products, either a single phage  
5 or a cocktail active against one or more bacterial  
6 strains or species versus a personalized phage therapy  
7 product that is selected for activity against a single  
8 clinical isolate.

9 You can think about route of administration,  
10 whether it's topical, interlesional, inhaled,  
11 intravenous, oral, or others, and then, if you throw  
12 in that the product is administered with a device or  
13 as part of a matrix, that adds a layer of complexity.

14 You can also think about whether the phage  
15 therapy product is intended for use as a stand-alone  
16 product, which we really haven't talked about at all,  
17 or whether it's to be used as an adjunct to  
18 antibiotics or as salvage therapy.

19 No matter which of these variables you need  
20 to consider, there are a number of regulatory  
21 principles that will apply to all phage therapy  
22 products. First and foremost, that phage therapy  
23 products are by definition, and Scott showed you the  
24 regulatory definition in his talk, phage therapy  
25 products are biological drugs. They are biologics and

1 they're drugs. And so, consequently, any clinical use  
2 of an unlicensed phage therapy product in the U.S.  
3 must be conducted under Investigational New Drug or  
4 IND regulations. So, for all intents and purposes at  
5 the current time, this applies to all phage therapy  
6 products. We don't have any that are licensed for use  
7 in the U.S.

8           And in order to get a phage therapy product  
9 licensed for use in the U.S., we will require a  
10 demonstration of safety, purity, potency, which is  
11 interpreted to mean effectiveness, and consistency of  
12 manufacture. And I have safety and potency underlined  
13 because those are the attributes that are the chief  
14 concerns of clinical development.

15           So Scott had a slide that was very much like  
16 this one in his talk. I'm not going to dwell on it  
17 too much, only to show you that, as Scott said, while  
18 effectiveness in manufacturing consistency are  
19 attributes that are demonstrated in greater detail and  
20 with greater certainty, as the various stages of  
21 clinical development progress, safety considerations  
22 predominate throughout the development process,  
23 beginning with pre-clinical development and extending  
24 all the way through licensure and beyond.

25           So what are the safety considerations that

1 are relevant for phage therapy products? Well, we've  
2 heard a lot today that phage are directly active only  
3 against specific target bacteria and are presumed for  
4 all intents and purposes to be inert with respect to  
5 human cells and tissues, and certainly we have a lot  
6 of accumulated clinical experience, mostly anecdotal,  
7 that would appear to corroborate this presumption.  
8 However, for any new investigational product, I think  
9 it's still important to consider a couple of safety  
10 items.

11           Number one, whether certain human tissues  
12 might be sensitive to components of phage material.  
13 So, as an example, you might imagine a patient who has  
14 a fulminant lower respiratory tract infection with  
15 compromised airway function and whether introduction  
16 of a large amount of phage antigen might somehow  
17 inflame that tissue and at least initially exacerbate  
18 the patient's condition. This is a theoretical  
19 concern. It's not something that's been described,  
20 but something to think about.

21           Similarly, one might worry about the  
22 potential toxic effects of product excipients or  
23 impurities. We've had some discussion today about  
24 residual endotoxin in phage preparations. One might  
25 also worry about the potential toxic effects of a

1 device or a matrix that's used to administer the phage  
2 therapy product.

3           And then, in addition to these potentially  
4 direct effect-related safety concerns, you might also  
5 want to consider indirect effects, such as effects of  
6 bacterial lysis at the site of infection, whether the  
7 phage might be able to transfer antibiotic resistance  
8 genes, and, finally, whether the phage might result in  
9 some changes to the microbiome. This would obviously  
10 be a greater concern for a cocktail that has a much  
11 wider spectrum of activity than it would for a single  
12 phage therapy product, but again just something to  
13 consider.

14           So, when one is thinking about initiating  
15 clinical development of a phage therapy product under  
16 IND, the antibiotic development model will naturally  
17 come to mind, and in that model, first-in-human Phase  
18 I studies of investigational drugs are typically  
19 conducted in healthy volunteers and they focus on  
20 safety and, if applicable, which is usually the case  
21 for antibiotics, pharmacokinetics.

22           However, for a phage therapy product, it's  
23 unclear how relevant safety and PK data generated in  
24 healthy volunteers would be to patients with active  
25 infections where the phage may interact with and

1 multiply in target bacteria.

2           So, as alternatives, one might consider  
3 taking into account, of course, the potential risks  
4 and any pre-clinical data that are available,  
5 conducting first-in-human studies not in healthy  
6 subjects but in relatively healthy subjects who are  
7 colonized by target bacteria but who do not have  
8 active infections or, to take it even a step further,  
9 first-in-human studies in less severely ill patients  
10 with active infections caused by the target bacteria.

11           Once you've selected your patient  
12 population, then the question is, well, what is your  
13 starting dose? What is your regimen? How do you  
14 select these?

15           Well, one approach would be to rely on data  
16 from relevant animal models. If there is prior  
17 clinical experience with related phage therapy  
18 products, that experience might be informative.  
19 Alternatively, do you just go with the maximum  
20 achievable titer in preparation? These are all  
21 possibilities.

22           Then, once you've started your trial, how do  
23 you optimize the dose and regimen for later  
24 development? What data can you collect from this  
25 first-in-human study and later studies to arrive at a

1 dose and regimen that will be the most safe and most  
2 effective?

3           So here are some relevant questions. How  
4 informative are pharmacokinetic data for making dose  
5 and regimen adjustments? Is clearance from the  
6 bloodstream after IV infusion relevant? We've heard  
7 an argument that maybe it's not. Is pharmacokinetic  
8 data from the site of infection informative? Maybe,  
9 maybe not. And how informative are measures of phage  
10 activity that are not directly related to morbidity  
11 and mortality? For example, does quantitative culture  
12 of the target bacteria from the site of infection help  
13 you in any way in determining dose and regimen?

14           Ultimately, the specific data to support  
15 initiation of clinical development and the design of  
16 early phase studies for phage therapy products will be  
17 reviewed by us in the context of IND submissions, and  
18 as Scott mentioned, we encourage prospective  
19 developers of phage therapy products to request a pre-  
20 IND meeting with us to discuss these topics. I have a  
21 URL up here on official FDA guidance for requesting  
22 formal regulatory meetings.

23           So let's think a little bit more toward  
24 late-stage development and licensure, and the  
25 regulatory principles that will be important here are

1 that labeling requirements are that all indications  
2 for a licensed product must be supported by  
3 substantial evidence of effectiveness. This  
4 substantial evidence must come from demonstration of  
5 effectiveness based on adequate and well-controlled  
6 clinical studies using a product that is standardized  
7 as to identity, strength, quality, purity, and dosage  
8 form.

9 So, as you can imagine, this is going to be  
10 challenging enough for defined phage cocktails. It's  
11 going to be ever-more challenging for personalized  
12 phage therapy. We do have initiatives for development  
13 and licensure of personalized medicine products, and  
14 so, you know, you can rely on the FDA to exercise  
15 regulatory flexibility in its approach to these  
16 requirements, but regardless, the intended indication  
17 of the phage therapy product will guide the design of  
18 the clinical trials to demonstrate safety and  
19 effectiveness.

20 So there are, of course, a number of very  
21 important challenges for demonstrating effectiveness  
22 of phage therapy products, in particular, those that  
23 are intended for use against multidrug-resistant  
24 bacterial organisms. Some of the challenges are  
25 outlined here.

1           For example, it can be challenging to  
2 recruit adequate numbers of subjects with the relevant  
3 disease process and pathogen to the intended use, even  
4 in larger multi-center trials. It can be challenging  
5 to identify and enroll eligible subjects in a timely  
6 manner relative to the course of illness. One related  
7 challenge is that the bacteria present at the site of  
8 infection at the onset of illness may be very  
9 different phenotypically from the bacteria that are  
10 present after antibiotic treatment has been ongoing  
11 for some time and even after phage therapy has been  
12 initiated and ongoing for some time.

13           And, finally, there is obviously the  
14 potential for confounding by non-uniformity of  
15 concomitant treatments, such as antibiotics and other  
16 therapies, especially for critically ill subjects  
17 where you cannot ethically withhold standard of care.

18           Fortunately, there are potential avenues  
19 available to address many of these challenges. One  
20 such avenue is the possibility of streamlined and/or  
21 adaptive trial designs. Joe Toerner will talk next  
22 after me and will discuss in some detail the CBER  
23 draft guidance on pathogen-focused antibacterial  
24 therapies, parts of which may be relevant to  
25 development of phage therapy products.

1                   Supportive efficacy data from relevant  
2                   animal models may also be important for supporting  
3                   licensure. And, finally, there's the availability of  
4                   alternative licensure pathways, for example,  
5                   accelerated approval in which approval can be based on  
6                   a surrogate end point that is reasonably likely to  
7                   predict clinical benefit, with the caveat, of course,  
8                   that there's a post-licensure requirement to confirm  
9                   this benefit.

10                   I've heard a lot from people during the  
11                   breaks about these and other challenges. Oh, my.

12                   (Laughter.)

13                   DR. FINK: Okay. I'll soldier on. So, you  
14                   know, one suggestion might be that developers who are  
15                   just starting out on clinical trials for -- is my mike  
16                   off now? My mike is off.

17                   Okay. So developers who are just starting  
18                   off on development of phage therapy products might  
19                   first want to try to minimize the variables that are  
20                   inherent to the intended use. So, you know, maybe  
21                   start with disease processes and patient populations  
22                   where you can minimize those variables. Maybe start  
23                   with *Staph* infections, *Staph* wound infections,  
24                   generate data that might be more broadly generalizable  
25                   to other disease processes and build from there.

1           So let's spend a few slides talking about  
2 personalized phage therapy, and by personalized phage  
3 therapy, in case anyone has not yet been hit over the  
4 head with it today, is the situation in which one or  
5 more phage selected from a library after screening for  
6 activity against specific clinical isolates from a  
7 specific patient. And then, on top of that,  
8 additional phage may be selected during the treatment  
9 course if evidence of decreasing effectiveness due to  
10 the development of bacterial resistance or immune  
11 clearance is found.

12           So the principal challenge is that the phage  
13 library may include a very large number of  
14 uncharacterized phage, so how then to provide this as  
15 a licensed product while ensuring safety and  
16 effectiveness.

17           Well, it turns out that we've encountered  
18 this type of situation in a regulatory manner in the  
19 past related to licensure of minimally manipulated  
20 allergenic placental or umbilical cord blood for use  
21 in specified hematopoietic disorders, and this  
22 situation is described in great detail in the FDA  
23 guidance cited below.

24           Just to boil it down to its pure essence,  
25 for these cellular products, each lot of the product

1 is different, but the safety and effectiveness of each  
2 lot is ensured by, first of all, an established  
3 manufacturing process and, second of all, by specified  
4 product characteristics that are used as release  
5 criteria for the lot.

6 Now there's a huge caveat for using this as  
7 precedent for phage therapy, and the caveat is that  
8 the guidance above was based on a very large docket of  
9 data, accumulated over many years, together with  
10 advisory committee input on several occasions. So  
11 we're talking about a potentially long road ahead to  
12 arrive at a similar point for phage therapy products  
13 for personalized use.

14 So it's unclear at this time whether a  
15 similar approach would be feasible for personalized  
16 phage therapy products. Might be. Might not be.  
17 There may be other approaches that are feasible as  
18 well. But whether it will be feasible will really  
19 depend on this central question: Can safety and  
20 effectiveness of an entire phage library be inferred  
21 based on specified product characteristics and  
22 accumulated experience with a limited subset of phage  
23 from that library?

24 And to break that question down into a  
25 couple of different components, first of all, for a

1 given indication or disease process and usage or route  
2 of administration and dosing regimen, is it reasonable  
3 to extrapolate safety and effectiveness across  
4 different phages? I don't know. Someone out there  
5 please tell me.

6 For a given phage therapy product, is it  
7 reasonable to extrapolate effectiveness across  
8 different indications or usages? I think that's a  
9 higher bar to clear and typically is not the accepted  
10 paradigm for licensure of antibiotics.

11 And so the question that I would ask the  
12 field to weigh in on is what variables or product  
13 characteristics might be used to predict and  
14 prospectively address uncertainties with safety and/or  
15 effectiveness, and then how do you apply those  
16 predictions to ensuring safety and effectiveness of  
17 personalized phage therapy products?

18 So what does the road ahead look like?  
19 Well, right now, after many years of largely anecdotal  
20 experience, at least in the modern era, we currently  
21 have no licensed phage therapy products available in  
22 the U.S., and so while Jason correctly pointed out  
23 that at least in the very near term use of phage  
24 therapy is likely to be under expanded access, our  
25 challenge to you, to the phage therapy field, is to

1 initiate scientifically rigorous clinical development  
2 programs that include adequate and well-controlled  
3 clinical trials to support licensure of phage therapy  
4 products, and to continue the positive messaging that  
5 Scott started before the break, CBER is prepared to  
6 assist developers of phage therapy products in  
7 addressing this challenge.

8 Now that doesn't mean that we're going to  
9 have ready answers to all of your questions, including  
10 many of the big ones, but we will certainly evaluate  
11 your proposals and we will help you think about  
12 reasonable, feasible, and scientifically sound  
13 approaches to address these questions and to develop  
14 your products.

15 So, in the meantime, I'll end the talk with  
16 a little bit more information about compassionate use  
17 or use under expanded access IND. The regulations for  
18 this are outlined in 21 C.F.R. 312, subpart (i), and  
19 compassionate use is to facilitate the availability of  
20 investigational drugs for patients with serious or  
21 immediately life-threatening diseases or conditions.  
22 All compassionate use under expanded access is subject  
23 to the following requirements.

24 So, first of all, there is no available  
25 comparable or satisfactory alternative. The

1 enrollment of the patient in a clinical trial,  
2 presumably under IND, is not possible. The treating  
3 physician should judge that the potential benefit  
4 justifies the potential risks and that those potential  
5 risks are not unreasonable in the context of the  
6 patient's disease or condition. And, finally,  
7 providing the investigational drug will not interfere  
8 with the clinical development of the product for the  
9 expanded access use.

10 So I cannot overstate that the primary  
11 purpose of expanded access use is to provide access to  
12 investigational drugs for patients in need. We are  
13 happy to do so. However, expanded access use is not  
14 intended to facilitate systematic collection of safety  
15 or effectiveness data to support licensure, and  
16 therefore, expanded access use is not a substitute for  
17 adequate and well-controlled clinical trials.

18 There are several different categories of  
19 expanded access, each with its own criteria for  
20 initiating use. In general, the level of evidence  
21 required increases as the number of individuals to be  
22 treated increases. We've heard the most today about  
23 individual patient expanded access, which includes  
24 emergency use, and for this use, the probable risk  
25 from the drug should not be greater than the probable

1 risk from the disease, as I said a couple slides ago.

2 The next step up would be an intermediate  
3 size population expanded access IND. Here, there  
4 needs to be evidence that the drug is safe at the dose  
5 and duration proposed for use to justify a clinical  
6 trial of approximately the same size as the number of  
7 patients intended to be treated. There should also be  
8 preliminary evidence of effectiveness.

9 I'd really like to steer the field away from  
10 intermediate-size expanded access use. I think  
11 whenever possible the use should be in the context of  
12 controlled clinical trials because that's where the  
13 most useful data is going to be generated.

14 The last category of expanded access which  
15 I'll just mention very briefly is treatment protocol  
16 or widespread use. Here, this use generally requires  
17 clinical data from Phase II or III trials, and usually  
18 there needs to be active pursuit of marketing approval  
19 for the investigational drug.

20 So here are the procedures for requesting  
21 expanded access use of a phage therapy product or any  
22 investigational drug for that matter. The request can  
23 be made as a new IND submission or as a new protocol  
24 in the context of an existing IND. The request needs  
25 to include applicable administrative CMC, pharm/tox,

1 and clinical information, as outlined in the  
2 regulations.

3 The information that we would require for  
4 single patient emergency use is going to be much more  
5 limited than for more widespread expanded access use.  
6 Ideally, this information would include a clinical  
7 history and treatment plan and CMC information about  
8 the phage source and preparation, endotoxin content,  
9 and sterility, and activity against a clinical  
10 isolate.

11 As you saw from the examples this morning,  
12 these are not absolute requirements, and, you know,  
13 obviously, it would depend on the clinical status of  
14 the patient and the degree of the need. All expanded  
15 access use requires documentation of informed consent  
16 and IRB approval or, for emergency use, IRB  
17 notification after the fact.

18 CBER can authorize emergency use expanded  
19 access for single patients based on informal  
20 communication, for example, by telephone  
21 communication, oftentimes within hours. The  
22 authorization is given for a single treatment course.  
23 So what does that mean, single treatment course?

24 Well, ideally, this would be defined with  
25 respect to the duration and the number of doses, but

1 we recognize that for phage therapy this is not going  
2 to be possible a lot of the time, and there may even  
3 be some change to the product administered, as you saw  
4 in Chip Schooley's example as emergence of resistance  
5 develops over time.

6 So we'll work with you, you know. Come with  
7 a proposal, we'll work with you. If emergency  
8 expanded access use is authorized, a formal submission  
9 is required within 15 days after this authorization.

10 I have below some contact information for  
11 physicians who are considering emergency use expanded  
12 access of phage therapy for single patients. There  
13 are phone numbers for contacting our office during  
14 business hours as well as, after hours, the emergency  
15 line, or you can, if you prefer to contact us by  
16 email, there's a general address, and then Cara Fiore,  
17 who was mentioned in several of the morning talks, has  
18 graciously agreed to have her email address made  
19 public. She's really the focal point of phage therapy  
20 regulation in our office.

21 Okay. So I'll end with a couple of summary  
22 points. Clinical evaluation and use of unlicensed  
23 phage therapy products in the U.S. must be conducted  
24 under IND. Development and licensure of phage therapy  
25 products will depend on product characteristics and

1 intended use. CBER is, of course, prepared to assist  
2 the phage therapy field in addressing scientific and  
3 regulatory challenges. And, finally, the expanded  
4 access IND mechanism is available for compassionate  
5 use of phage therapy products but is not a substitute  
6 for adequate and well-controlled clinical trials.

7 So I'd like to thank everyone at CBER who  
8 helped with preparation of this talk, and if we have  
9 time for any questions, I'm happy to take them.

10 (Applause.)

11 DR. CARLSON: So we have just a little bit  
12 of time. We can take maybe two questions.

13 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yeah, thank you for that  
14 talk. I'm just kind of curious. I work at CDC and  
15 there's a real interest there, of course, in  
16 antimicrobial resistance and particularly in, you  
17 know, the use of fecal microbial transplants and  
18 probiotics in potentially treating -- you know,  
19 preventing antimicrobial resistance in the gut, in the  
20 gut flora or microbiome.

21 I'm kind of just curious. Do you see any  
22 sort of corollaries between your view of how you're  
23 going to deal with these issues with using probiotics  
24 and regulating those and phage?

25 DR. FINK: Right. Well, I guess the biggest

1 parallel is that, you know, while probiotics may be  
2 defined organisms, once you get into the realm of  
3 microbiota-based products, you're dealing with a, you  
4 know, largely uncharacterized product, and so that may  
5 vary from, you know, from batch to batch and lot to  
6 lot. And so there you're kind of running into the  
7 same questions about, you know, how do you ensure that  
8 a given lot of product is going to be safe and  
9 effective, you know, based on whatever data you've  
10 accumulated with that product to date.

11 So there are parallels and, of course, we  
12 have been working to address those very questions with  
13 microbiome-based products as well.

14 MR. OUSTEROUT: Hi. Dave Ousterout from  
15 Locus Biosciences. Just curious what your thoughts  
16 are on making smaller data sets in terms of Phase II  
17 and, you know, the extreme is Animal Rule and how that  
18 might be more applicable in phage therapy,  
19 particularly for MDR.

20 DR. FINK: Right. So, you know, we do  
21 recognize that, you know, powering trials for, you  
22 know, MDRO-related indications is going to be  
23 difficult. There are, you know, various ways that  
24 clinical trials can be structured that might be able  
25 to take advantage of smaller sample sizes while still

1 providing substantial evidence of effectiveness. Joe  
2 might touch on that a little bit in his talk as well.

3 The issue of Animal Rule is an entirely  
4 different issue, you know, altogether.

5 DR. CARLSON: Okay.

6 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Hi, I'm just wondering  
7 about the safety of phage therapy. As you mentioned,  
8 you know, we have a lot of confidence on the safety of  
9 phages and your concern you highlighted will be the  
10 impurity and also endotoxin level.

11 So, if we follow the instruction and do the  
12 testing, eventual testing, do we still need to do the  
13 standard package for toxicity?

14 DR. FINK: So, by toxicity are you referring  
15 to GLP?

16 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yeah.

17 DR. FINK: General toxicology studies?

18 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yeah.

19 DR. FINK: Right. So, you know, our  
20 position at this time is that based on the available  
21 data we do not see a requirement for GLP general  
22 toxicology studies for phage therapy products.

23 Now, there may be certain safety concerns  
24 that arise on a product-by-product basis that might be  
25 addressed with more focused safety studies that could

1 be conducted in animals, but we don't at this time  
2 have a requirement for general GLP toxicology studies.

3 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay, thank you. Can I  
4 ask another one? Okay.

5 DR. CARLSON: Yes, go ahead.

6 AUDIENCE MEMBER: You know, for the phage  
7 therapy you are dealing with the bacteria-resistance  
8 infections, so therefore it's not ethical to choose  
9 negative control, placebo control. And then if you  
10 choose the current, the standard treatment, now, if  
11 it's actually resistance do you think it's -- what's  
12 your suggestion like to choose the current standard  
13 when we know probably it's already resistant to it?

14 DR. FINK: Right. So, I think Joe Toerner  
15 may have, you know, more to say about, you know, the  
16 control arm for some of these trials in his talk  
17 coming up. But generally you'd be looking to, you  
18 know, demonstrate statistical superiority of the  
19 combination of phage therapy plus whatever standard of  
20 care treatment is being given, whether it's actually  
21 effective or not in your trial.

22 DR. CARLSON: So that is a good lead-in to  
23 introducing the next talk. So, next we're going to  
24 have Joe Toerner from the Center for Drugs who is  
25 going to talk to us about development of single

1 species antibacterial drugs.

2 DR. TOERNER: Hi. Good afternoon. Thank  
3 you.

4 I spent six enjoyable years in the Division  
5 of Vaccines and Related Product Applications in CBER,  
6 and so I really appreciate being here and working and  
7 presenting again with friends and colleagues from  
8 CBER.

9 About 10 years ago I transferred to CDER in  
10 the Office of Antimicrobial Products, and it occurred  
11 to me putting this talk together that in the next half  
12 an hour I'm going to describe for you what was  
13 probably a decade of work in advancement of regulatory  
14 science to arrive at recommendations for sponsors  
15 interested in antibacterial drug development to have  
16 an achievable clinical development program, yet still  
17 falls within our statutory requirement that we  
18 establish safety and effectiveness of new drugs, and  
19 as part of the work that we've done we did include  
20 single species antibacterial drug development.

21 And so we recognized over the past couple of  
22 years that sponsors are more interested in clinical  
23 development programs in areas of unmet medical need,  
24 for example, patients with highly resistant bacterial  
25 infections. So, we did issue a draft guidance

1 document in 2013, and that draft guidance is a  
2 guidance for unmet medical need more generally. I  
3 know Doran had mentioned a guidance that we have. It  
4 doesn't pertain specifically to single species drug  
5 development but the concepts in that guidance apply to  
6 single species antibacterial drug development.

7 Clinical trials have been completed and in  
8 fact some antibacterial drugs have been approved using  
9 the approaches in this draft guidance document. For  
10 example, ceftazidime-avibactam was an approval on the  
11 basis of some of the concepts that were described in  
12 this draft guidance document to help streamline  
13 antibacterial drugs for unmet medical need.

14 The types of drugs that we're seeing who are  
15 interested in this area of unmet medical need are  
16 generally drugs that have activity against  
17 Gram-negative bacterial, generally *Enterobacteriaceae*  
18 that -- and some of which have anti-Pseudomonal  
19 activity, and the link below is the direct link to the  
20 draft guidance document.

21 So, in our guidance document we describe  
22 some clinical trial design options, and in the  
23 guidance we provided a discussion that a single trial  
24 in this area of unmet medical need can be adequate  
25 evidence of safety and effectiveness.

1           For a more traditional development program  
2 we usually require two adequate and well-controlled  
3 trials, but a single non-inferiority trial in a body  
4 site of infection can be used as evidence of efficacy,  
5 and we have a number of different indication-specific  
6 guidance documents that clearly describe the end  
7 points and the justification for the non-inferiority  
8 margin to be used in those guidance documents, and of  
9 course a finding of superiority is always readily  
10 interpretable. But we have said that you can pool  
11 across different body sites of infection for a finding  
12 of superiority in a single trial, and to discuss with  
13 us what the end points would be for such a trial for  
14 superiority.

15           We also described what was a part of an  
16 Infectious Disease Society of America White Paper on  
17 drug development, and that's the nested trial design  
18 where from the beginning a trial was designed for  
19 non-inferiority, but as with any patient who enrolls  
20 into a clinical trial you subsequently obtain the *in*  
21 *vitro* susceptibility results and a patient in clinical  
22 practice as well may inadvertently have a bacterial  
23 infection that's resistant to the control  
24 antibacterial drug in such a time, and while you would  
25 never design a clinical trial where the comparator

1 group would be ineffective therapy, there does exist  
2 at least a potential for a few patients to have  
3 received ineffective therapy with a control drug, and  
4 it provides an opportunity then to pull that subgroup  
5 out and do a separate superiority analysis. So, we  
6 describe that type of trial design in the guidance.

7           And what's not specifically in the guidance  
8 but we have -- we have done this with the approval of  
9 ceftazidime-avibactam is for new beta-lactamase  
10 inhibitors where they're pairing with an approved  
11 beta-lactam drug, we can rely on our previous findings  
12 of safety and effectiveness from the approved  
13 antibacterial drug that's paired with a new  
14 beta-lactamase inhibitor and show a safety profile of  
15 the combination as well as providing evidence that the  
16 beta-lactamase is reversing the resistance.

17           And then, of course, a superiority trial  
18 design with adjunctive therapy plus standard of care  
19 showing superiority over standard of care.

20           So, these are some of the trial design  
21 options that we discussed in our draft guidance  
22 document, and they -- some of them are applicable to  
23 single species-specific drugs, but there is an  
24 increasing interest in this area, in particular, drugs  
25 that have activity against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* or

1 *Acinetobacter baumannii*, and designing scientifically  
2 sound and feasible development programs has been the  
3 focus of workshops and advisory committee discussion.

4           We do acknowledge that there are challenges  
5 with products that target a single species. They're  
6 not commonly identified in any one particular  
7 infection type. These patients are generally very  
8 ill, often in an intensive care unit setting, and you  
9 need to start effective therapy immediately, and the  
10 therapy should be empiric therapy because there's  
11 often diagnostic uncertainty at the time of  
12 presentation, and it's very difficult to identify  
13 patients in advance to even approach them for  
14 potential enrollment in a trial, and there's  
15 difficulty in maintaining a registry of such patients,  
16 but we do recognize that there is potential clinical  
17 utility of antibacterial drugs that target single  
18 species of bacteria, and we want to find feasible  
19 solutions to develop these products.

20           And so for the rest of my talk I'm going to  
21 be summarizing our discussions at two public workshops  
22 and then an advisory committee meeting that we held  
23 recently.

24           So, about this time last year we held a  
25 two-day workshop on facilitating antibacterial drug

1 development for patients with unmet need, and we also  
2 discussed antibacterial drugs that target a single  
3 species of bacteria.

4 We then held another workshop in March of this  
5 year on animal model development; in particular,  
6 animal models for *Acinetobacter baumannii* and  
7 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and then we brought all of  
8 this information that we gathered from these workshops  
9 and presented before an advisory committee meeting in  
10 a public discussion.

11 So, the workshop last year was a two-day  
12 workshop. The first day was on developing drugs for  
13 patients with unmet medical need in general. The  
14 second day was devoted to drugs that target a single  
15 bacterial species.

16 So, for the first day we did discuss the  
17 trial design considerations that were outlined in our  
18 unmet need guidance document, and an important issue  
19 emerged in that workshop was that there are truly  
20 significant challenges in pre-specifying a trial  
21 that's designed to show superiority in patients with  
22 multidrug-resistant bacteria.

23 And what was also emphasized at that  
24 workshop was the importance of obtaining good  
25 pharmacokinetic data in the target population of

1 patients in the intensive care unit to ensure that  
2 you're offering patients the correct dose.

3 And again I provided the link for the meeting  
4 documents and the meeting transcript.

5 So, the second day was devoted to drugs that  
6 target a single bacterial species, and it was  
7 acknowledged that there are difficulties in conducting  
8 trials. We did provide a hypothetical case scenario  
9 of a drug that had antibacterial activity limited only  
10 to *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and so there were several  
11 clinical trial designs and topics that were discussed  
12 and all of them have challenges and limitations, and  
13 in the next four slides I'll go through each of these  
14 potential trial designs and clinical development  
15 considerations.

16 So, the first consideration was the  
17 non-inferiority clinical trial design. As I had  
18 mentioned, we have a number of indication-specific  
19 guidance documents that describe the end points and  
20 the justification for the non-inferiority margin, the  
21 treatment effect of a control antibacterial drug, and  
22 it was acknowledged that you can enroll in a single  
23 trial patients who have hospital-acquired pneumonia or  
24 ventilator-associated pneumonia, HAP/VABP.

25 You can enroll them in the same trial and

1 include patients that have bacteremia regardless of  
2 the source of infection because those patients with  
3 bacteremia and multidrug-resistant organisms have the  
4 same mortality outcomes as patients with HABP and  
5 VABP, so you can enroll them in the same trial.

6 At the workshop discussion, the participants  
7 thought this could be a feasible option if we were to  
8 consider greater certainty in the efficacy findings.

9 So, for example, if we were to entertain a  
10 wider non-inferiority margin than what we describe for  
11 a traditional drug development program that you  
12 perhaps could have a smaller sample size and these  
13 would -- these non-inferiority trials could be a  
14 feasible option.

15 Enrollment wouldn't need to be limited to  
16 patients who have broadly-resistant organisms. You  
17 could enroll all comers, if you will, with these  
18 particular types of infections, and the availability  
19 of a rapid diagnostic would obviously help identify  
20 patients for enrollment but they wouldn't change the  
21 frequency with which these infections occur.

22 It was also acknowledged in any  
23 non-inferiority trial that you're going to have  
24 confounding by concomitant therapies and -- that are  
25 often used in this very sick patient population.

1           The second option was superiority trials  
2           and, again, this is an obvious finding of efficacy,  
3           and here you would want to try to enroll patients who  
4           have evidence of broad resistance to available  
5           therapies, but these may be very difficult to enroll  
6           and identify into a trial. And you could enroll  
7           patients with one or more body sites of infection as  
8           we've outlined in our draft guidance document for  
9           unmet need, but the determination of superiority is  
10          difficult. And furthermore, to show superiority may  
11          be time-limited because it just depends on the  
12          available therapy and whether or not that therapy is  
13          considered to be sub-optimal, because once new  
14          therapies become available then your ability to  
15          demonstrate superiority becomes difficult.

16          So, the third option was to conduct a study  
17          in patients with a higher likelihood of having  
18          infections due to *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* such as  
19          patients with cystic fibrosis, and you'd need to  
20          clearly identify the clinical condition that you were  
21          treating whether it be, you know, pulmonary  
22          exacerbations caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, and  
23          then extrapolating the findings from a patient  
24          population with cystic fibrosis to a general  
25          population with other infections may be challenging.

1           And then the fourth option was approval  
2           under the Animal Rule, so this is a setting where  
3           efficacy data is obtained from animal models of  
4           infection and this is generally done in settings where  
5           efficacy trials are not ethical and in the situation  
6           that we were considering that efficacy trials may not  
7           be feasible to conduct, and we acknowledged that  
8           animal efficacy data would likely be supported by at  
9           least some clinical data from patients with a variety  
10          of infections caused by the single species of  
11          bacteria.

12           So, it was this last option that led us to  
13          consider another workshop that we held in March. This  
14          was our animal models workshop, and we wanted to  
15          discuss in greater detail the current state of animal  
16          models of serious infections caused by *Acinetobacter*  
17          *baumannii* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and future  
18          directions in this area.

19           We did have participation from academia,  
20          industry, and other government agencies, and sponsors  
21          came to present their proposals for clinical  
22          development of two products. One had activity  
23          against, only against *Acinetobacter baumannii*. The  
24          other sponsor's product had activity only against  
25          *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

1           So, the key topics that were discussed was  
2           an overview of the use of the Animal Rule to support  
3           approval for treatment of plague and treatment of  
4           anthrax. We discussed the current role of animal  
5           models, their attributes and shortcomings, and given  
6           the urgent need for these unmet medical need therapies  
7           we entertained what role the animal models would have  
8           that would accompany the limited clinical data that we  
9           would see in a clinical development program.

10           So, we approached this workshop with sort of  
11           some general achievable considerations that you could  
12           obtain at least some clinical data but it would be  
13           very limited. There would be evidence of activity and  
14           perhaps evidence of efficacy in a relevant animal  
15           model of infection. There would be robust  
16           pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic data that would be  
17           included in a clinical development program, and an  
18           acknowledgement that there would be limited human  
19           safety information, and of course we would have the  
20           required non-clinical safety data as any drug  
21           development program would have.

22           And so what was discussed at this workshop,  
23           again, was the concept of the non-inferiority trial,  
24           could this be done, and is this feasible, and, again,  
25           the use of prior and concomitant effective therapies

1 could confound the assessment of the treatment effect  
2 of the investigational drug.

3 But using a wide NI margin could potentially  
4 be feasible, and just to provide an example for  
5 HABP/VABP we allow, and we describe in our guidance  
6 document a non-inferiority margin of 10 percent for  
7 standard development programs, but for products that  
8 have and can address an unmet medical need, we  
9 consider a wider non-inferiority margin of 12.5  
10 percent that has the effect of reducing the sample  
11 size in a trial that could be completed in a sooner  
12 period of time.

13 But in this -- in this discussion we did  
14 entertain the possibility of considering a  
15 non-inferiority margin that's even wider, more equal  
16 to the estimate of the treatment effect, and I think  
17 an entire talk could be designed on just how we  
18 approached and defined the non-inferiority margin for  
19 HABP/VABP. But as just a general consideration, and  
20 to try to summarize it as best as I can promptly, it  
21 took a number of published clinical trials over years  
22 to ascertain that ineffective therapy has probably the  
23 best mortality rate of about 60 percent.

24 Effective therapy has probably a worst  
25 mortality rate of about 30 percent. So that treatment

1 difference then is a 30 percent difference of  
2 mortality.

3           So, that is a -- and because we're looking  
4 at older studies, there are cross-study comparisons,  
5 some are observational studies. So, in order to  
6 discount some of that uncertainty we define a  
7 treatment effect of approximately 20 percent, and so  
8 while for unmet need programs we're willing to go to  
9 12.5 percent. Perhaps for single species product  
10 development we could consider a non-inferiority margin  
11 that approaches more towards 20 percent that would  
12 further reduce the sample size. And what Doran was  
13 mentioning could -- you know, could we work within the  
14 fact that we will have a limited trial size and could  
15 this potentially be feasible then for a sponsor to  
16 pre-specify this as a non-inferiority margin to move  
17 forward with clinical development.

18           Again, we discussed superiority trials, and  
19 as I had mentioned it's a time-sensitive approach. As  
20 new standard of care therapies become available it's  
21 not going to be possible to show superiority of an  
22 investigational drug, and so sponsors generally aren't  
23 willing to pre-specify a finding of superiority when  
24 they're planning their efficacy trials.

25           And so you'll see on this slide a lot of

1 this language is very similar to language that's in  
2 the Animal Rule, but when considering even evidence of  
3 activity in an animal model we would want to know that  
4 the effect is demonstrated in more than one animal  
5 species, and that it's expected to react with the  
6 response predicted for humans; that the animal model  
7 infection is relevant to the clinical condition being  
8 studied in humans; and that the end point in the  
9 animal model is actually a -- is similar to the  
10 desired benefit in humans, which is generally survival  
11 or prevention of major morbidity.

12 And so, you know, at the conclusion of the  
13 two workshops that we had we thought, well, what  
14 are -- what are potential outcomes of these types of  
15 programs that we talked about, and the best scenario  
16 is the first one, that we have a successful clinical  
17 trial with a finding of superiority or  
18 non-inferiority, acknowledging the limitations, and  
19 there are no major safety concerns.

20 The second possibility is that we just --  
21 there's just no evidence to support a meaningful  
22 benefit, and similarly, the fourth scenario that the  
23 safety concerns do not allow a favorable risk/benefit  
24 assessment. You know, those are situations we don't  
25 like to see sponsors be in, but those would be more

1 clear scenarios of the findings of a clinical data  
2 package.

3 We have an interest in this third potential  
4 scenario which is that you can't really discern  
5 efficacy in the completed clinical trial that's small  
6 due to multiple confounders and to what extent then  
7 can we rely on the animal models of infection in such  
8 a scenario?

9 And just so I won't forget to mention, in  
10 our guidance document we do allow a very limited  
11 population at the dose and duration of therapy,  
12 approximately 300 patients is what we describe in our  
13 guidance document.

14 So, we took all of this information from the  
15 workshops and we presented summary information to our  
16 April 13th advisory committee meeting. We also  
17 presented information that was discussed in the public  
18 from the two sponsors who presented their proposals  
19 for clinical development scenarios, and the two key  
20 topics were development programs for single  
21 species-specific antibacterial drugs where the  
22 bacterial species is not commonly identified, and  
23 should a clinical development program not be feasible  
24 or the clinical data are not interpretable, what is  
25 the role of the animal models of infection.

1           And so here on the slide is just a summary  
2 of our meeting -- of the discussion by our advisory  
3 committee, and the committee agreed there is an unmet  
4 medical need and that species-specific products are  
5 important for continued development.

6           But the next two bullet points were  
7 important for us to hear: that trials in humans can  
8 be conducted. They're complicated, they're difficult  
9 to do, but they can be conducted. And the third  
10 bullet point that there are limitations in the current  
11 animal models of infection and that the results of  
12 animal model studies should not be used as the sole  
13 source of efficacy. So, those two bullet points were  
14 important for us to hear.

15           They did find some interest in the  
16 presentations of the clinical development strategies  
17 in favor of the non-inferiority clinical trial design.  
18 For example, the investigational drug that has  
19 activity against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, if you pair  
20 that with ertapenem, that has a notable lack of  
21 activity against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* but has broad  
22 coverage for many other bacterial pathogens that  
23 you'll be worried about empirically when starting  
24 therapy, you could design a non-inferiority trial with  
25 this as your test arm, compare that to a drug that has

1 efficacy against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and that would  
2 enable you then to show non-inferiority of the  
3 investigational drug for *Pseudomonas* in the patient  
4 population that has *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

5 Other comments from our Committee members  
6 were global clinical trials networks and it's  
7 noteworthy that in last week's New England Journal of  
8 Medicine Drs. Woodcock and LaVange from CDER described  
9 the concepts of having platform clinical trials, and  
10 described the antibacterial drug development as a  
11 potential area where having a platform clinical trial  
12 could -- could help industry, academia, and regulatory  
13 authorities to work together, and thought that rapid  
14 diagnostics would help enrollment in a clinical trial.

15 The Committee also talked about some  
16 post-marketing strategies. Is there a possibility for  
17 a drug distribution network? That was a question  
18 raised by our Committee members. Can we limit the  
19 indication to "salvage," for use only as a last  
20 option? And then our Committee members reminded us  
21 that we now have an operational Sentinel system where  
22 we can evaluate post-marketing safety and to make use  
23 of that.

24 And so I included the link here too for the  
25 Advisory Committee presentations and transcripts.

1           So, the punchline is that in CEDR we are  
2 working with sponsors to design clinical trials that  
3 will establish safety and effectiveness of single  
4 species drugs, but we're willing to exercise  
5 flexibility and show greater uncertainty in that  
6 clinical development program that would allow a  
7 smaller clinical trial to be conducted.

8           We want sponsors to conduct robust  
9 pharmacokinetic analyses in the patient population  
10 that would use these drugs, and we're still  
11 interested -- because of the uncertainty in the  
12 clinical development program, we're still interested  
13 in establishing animal models having greater  
14 certainty, greater understanding of the results of the  
15 animal models, so we're still interested in that  
16 component because that could still be supportive of  
17 the clinical trial findings in an overall data  
18 package.

19           So, I thank you for your attention and happy  
20 to answer any questions.

21           (Applause.)

22           DR. CARLSON: Given the fact that we're a  
23 little bit behind time we're going to go to the panel  
24 in just a couple of minutes, I think, since I see one  
25 of our panelists. Brian, did you have a question?

1 We're just going to go to the panel.

2 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I have a question. On the  
3 panel? Okay, I follow you.

4 DR. CARLSON: Yes, we'll just start the  
5 panel discussion now.

6 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay.

7 DR. CARLSON: And since you're going to be  
8 up here you can ask your question. So, I'll invite  
9 all the speakers and our two extra panelists to come  
10 up. The additional panelists are Cara Fiore who is a  
11 primary reviewer in CBER. You've seen her name on the  
12 screen a few times today, and Marion Gruber, the  
13 director of the Office of Vaccines.

14 And I'm told to remind all the panelists to  
15 speak directly into the microphones so that you are  
16 heard by the people in the overflow rooms.

17 So, we can go ahead and get started with  
18 your question.

19 DR. GRUBER: Okay. Well, thank you. So, I  
20 had a question for Joe. Actually, I thought it was a  
21 very intriguing discussion here and I think we can --  
22 we should really benefit from having further  
23 discussion with that division and to see, you know, if  
24 we can borrow from some of the approaches that they  
25 have mapped out.

1           In that regard I wanted to ask Joe. So, you  
2 talked a bit about, you know, the value of doing  
3 non-inferiority or superiority trials for these, you  
4 know, single species, drugs or therapies. What I  
5 wanted to know is a bit in these clinical trial  
6 designs, the non-inferiority as well as superiority  
7 trials, the end points that you would be looking at.  
8 So, that's one question.

9           And the second perhaps related to this, you  
10 mentioned clinical trials and you mentioned Animal  
11 Rule approval, but you didn't really discuss the  
12 accelerated approval provisions that are also  
13 available to us, so I wondered if you could comment on  
14 that a bit.

15           DR. TOERNER: Sure. Thanks, Marion, for the  
16 question.

17           So, we have -- we've done quite a bit of  
18 work to establish the end points for our  
19 indication-specific guidances, and many of the end  
20 points are different. So, for example, for HABP/VABP  
21 we found a strong treatment effect on the end point of  
22 all-cause mortality. So, clinical trials are being  
23 designed and conducted in HABP/VABP, and the primary  
24 efficacy end point is an end point of survival. And  
25 so that's one example.

1           Another example is complicated urinary tract  
2 infection where we found a strong treatment effect on  
3 an end point of -- it's a responder end point where  
4 patients have to have microbiologic eradication on a  
5 urine culture after treatment, and they have to show  
6 evidence that their symptoms of urinary tract  
7 infection are gone, are resolved. And so that  
8 responder end point was found to have a very strong  
9 treatment effect and, you know, a third example is  
10 complicated intra-abdominal infection where we expect  
11 28 days after completion of -- 28 days after  
12 enrollment we expect the patient to be free of  
13 symptoms from their complicated intra-abdominal  
14 infection, and so those are three very different types  
15 of end points.

16           And so if you're entertaining a clinical  
17 trial where you're enrolling lots of different  
18 infections, that's where we say in the guidance come  
19 and talk to us about how to approach this, and we've  
20 already had a strong discussion that allows patients  
21 with bacteremia at any site, any body site infection  
22 because their survival rate is identical to the  
23 survival rate in HABP/VABP, you can enroll those  
24 patients in the same trial and have the end point of  
25 survival.

1           But how to approach a clinical trial where  
2 you're enrolling patients with complicated urinary  
3 tract infection, complicated intra-abdominal  
4 infection, HABP/VABP, you know, what's the end point  
5 to be used. We think for a finding of superiority you  
6 could probably use a combination of end points, but it  
7 may take some work to sort out how to approach this.  
8 Are there statistical concerns that we have to think  
9 about? Should we give more weight to survival end  
10 point and give less weight to a complicated urinary  
11 tract infection end point? You know, is there a way  
12 to weight the different end points in the patients?

13           So, those are some considerations that we  
14 have. We have thought about accelerated approval and  
15 in fact there is a brief paragraph about it in our  
16 draft guidance document, but because our clinical  
17 trial end points always occur within a couple of days  
18 or weeks with therapy, you know, the course of therapy  
19 is short, your clinical benefit is achieved -- is  
20 known in a very short period of time, we're finding it  
21 very difficult to apply the principles of accelerated  
22 approval where you have a surrogate end point.

23           But in the case of, you know, these  
24 infections there's really not a need for a surrogate.  
25 You know the clinical outcome at a very short period

1 of time during or after completion of therapy. So,  
2 we've found it challenging to apply the principles of  
3 accelerated approval to antibacterial drug  
4 development.

5 DR. YOUNG: I don't have a question but I do  
6 have a suggestion for Doran and Scott. I'm getting  
7 inundated by phone calls and emails requesting  
8 information about clinical trials for phage therapy.  
9 And so I would hope that you would consider taking a  
10 subset of those beautiful slides the two of you showed  
11 and putting together a website at the FDA that we  
12 could send people to explain there are no clinical  
13 trials in the United States, and outline the other  
14 procedures that are open to them.

15 For example, having their physician explore  
16 eIND and the mechanism, because this is going to get  
17 worse and the publicity is increasing and this is a  
18 very unusual situation as somebody pointed out; it's  
19 something that we -- you know, lots of people think  
20 it's going to work but it's years away from any type  
21 of clinical approval. Just a suggestion.

22 DR. FIORE: I actually have a question for  
23 Joe. In terms of the platform approach could you, for  
24 those of us who are not familiar with the platform  
25 clinical trial approach could you tell us what that

1 would look like?

2 DR. TOERNER: No, it's actually I would --  
3 I'd refer you to the July 6 New England Journal of  
4 Medicine. There's a review article by Dr. Woodcock  
5 and Dr. LaVange, and as you know Dr. Woodcock is  
6 center director and Dr. LaVange is the office director  
7 for biostatistics. And in their review they discuss,  
8 it's mainly trials in cancer research where they have  
9 platform trials where you're enrolling -- it's just a  
10 way to -- it's just a way to enhance clinical  
11 development in cancer therapies.

12 One example is the I-SPY trial and another  
13 example is the Lung-MAP trial, but you're enrolling  
14 patients with different phenotypes of cancer because  
15 drug -- you know, oncology is getting more focused on,  
16 you know, what -- focused direct development that  
17 pertains to the expression of, you know, tumor  
18 expression factors, and so they want to capture a  
19 large number of potential patients into a trial, and  
20 so it's a way of having one trial, and so it's  
21 actually -- master protocol, is the title of the --  
22 so, having a continuously running functional master  
23 protocol it's -- you know, you continue to enroll  
24 patients in a protocol, and if you don't have an  
25 antibacterial drug ready to go you're gathering data

1 on patients enrolled in the protocol on standard of  
2 care therapies, and then once you get an  
3 investigational drug that's ready to go you plug that  
4 into the master protocol, have it randomized  
5 controlled.

6           You can rely on -- I mean, to some extent  
7 it's a -- it's a historical control but when you plug  
8 in the new investigational drug into a master protocol  
9 you then can randomize so you have a component of a  
10 randomized concurrent control study, but you can also  
11 rely on some of the information you've obtained from  
12 your previously enrolled patients who have standard of  
13 care therapy and you can consider a three-to-one or  
14 four-to-one randomization, and it's just a way of  
15 efficiently doing a clinical development and multiple  
16 sponsors can then use the master protocol, so you  
17 could have two or three different investigational  
18 drugs that are entering and exiting the master  
19 protocol.

20           DR. GABARD: Maybe a couple of comments.  
21 For all these products, phage therapy products that  
22 are going to target a single bacterial species when we  
23 are going to do comparisons with the standard of care  
24 and antibiotic, and if you want to show superiority  
25 and non-inferiority, the only segment where we can

1 really show that, because most of these antibiotics  
2 are fairly efficient, is on a subgroup of bacteria  
3 which are resistant to the antibiotics.

4 And if the subgroup is the only choice to  
5 show the superiority or the non-inferiority then you  
6 need to recruit forever because you know that these  
7 cases are not so frequent, and then the level of  
8 recruitment is so low that it will take you maybe five  
9 years to get the proper number of patients to show the  
10 superiority. What can we do to avoid this problem?

11 DR. TOERNER: I guess that question is -- I  
12 mean, it is a question of antibacterial drug  
13 resistance, and you are -- in a rough analogy you are  
14 comparing this to the Infectious Diseases Society of  
15 America and their nested clinical trial design. It  
16 just depends on how you set up your clinical trial.  
17 If what the Infectious Diseases Society of America  
18 is -- and our guidance -- what we're saying is you set  
19 up your trial for non-inferiority and you seek out to  
20 establish non-inferiority.

21 It's only at the end of the day that you  
22 come to recognize that some of the patients may have  
23 resistance phenotype. You can then pull those  
24 patients out and do a superiority, but you still have  
25 the clinical trial to show evidence of efficacy by

1 non-inferiority in the patients who have fully  
2 susceptible bacterial pathogens.

3 DR. GABARD: Have you been thinking about  
4 expanding the therapeutic area to several therapeutic  
5 areas with one treatment? So, in other words, would  
6 it be possible to, instead of treating only with  
7 infection with a single product which is targeting one  
8 bacterial species, that you take in account in a trial  
9 several therapeutic areas. For instance, with  
10 infection and maybe ulcers and maybe something that  
11 are fairly comparable so that we expand the number of  
12 cases where we can provide the treatment to patients  
13 and then at the same time expand the number of cases  
14 where you might have resistance to antibiotics and  
15 then the frequency of the cases.

16 DR. FINK: I think, Joe, you mentioned, you  
17 know, a strategy similar to that where you have  
18 enrollment of patients with multiple disease processes  
19 in the same trial, although in your scenario the  
20 unifying principle is that all patients get the same  
21 antibiotic against the same bacteria, so that would  
22 have to translate.

23 I think, going back to your first question,  
24 I think we do acknowledge, you know, for phage therapy  
25 there is an added complexity or challenge with respect

1 to demonstrating even non-inferiority which is that,  
2 you know, unless you're willing to remove all  
3 concomitant antibacterial therapy with activity  
4 against the organism of interest like you might do  
5 with the, you know, investigational product plus your  
6 ertapenem strategy, then you really can't demonstrate  
7 non-inferiority.

8 And so I don't think that the phage therapy  
9 field is at a stage yet where we have the confidence  
10 of, you know, going it alone with phages for, you  
11 know, an infection of interest in covering, you know,  
12 everything else with empiric antibiotics, but I think  
13 you have to definitely think about that more.

14 DR. LEHMAN: This is not a broad answer to  
15 that because this is a special case, but one of the  
16 things that -- one of the scenarios where that --  
17 where we might not have some of the same problems. We  
18 found with chronic rhinosinusitis the patient  
19 population that really has that unmet medical need is  
20 a population that has already been through rhinoplasty  
21 and multiple rounds of antibiotics, and they still are  
22 experiencing symptoms that are not life threatening,  
23 but make their lives fairly miserable, and it's an  
24 unusual situation. That's why I say this is not a  
25 broad answer.

1           But it is one indication where we may have  
2           an easier time collecting some of that data because,  
3           you know, standard of care for the patient population  
4           that we used in our clinical trial was a sinus wash.  
5           It's a saline wash. It relieves some symptoms, but  
6           doesn't provide a long-term decolonization or  
7           eradication of the infection, and that's a scenario  
8           where there is an option to look at a  
9           placebo-controlled situation where the standard of  
10          care is not that great because it's not life  
11          threatening, not dealing with that same problem.

12           AUDIENCE MEMBER: So, we've talked a great  
13          deal about sort of the clinical development side. I  
14          was wondering if we could take a moment for the  
15          non-clinical. So, I guess the question is what are  
16          the additional considerations or perhaps notable  
17          exceptions for non-clinical data and in particular  
18          just to get you to an IND, and in light of some of the  
19          things you may run into in the clinic, a more robust  
20          IND package?

21           DR. FINK: So, you know, proof of principle  
22          in a relevant animal model is always nice. I don't  
23          know that it's an absolute requirement to initiate,  
24          you know, clinical trials, but it's certainly nice to  
25          have. PK data, to the extent that it might be useful

1 and, you know, that's an open-ended question, is --  
2 you know, it's non-clinical information that could  
3 help guide and support the initial clinical, you know,  
4 trial design.

5 I don't know if there is any, you know, *in*  
6 *vitro* information that --

7 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I think you're kind of  
8 nailing it in the sense that these parameters aren't  
9 exactly well defined as they are for a small molecule  
10 brethren, right. So, you know, your tox study, is  
11 that done in an infected animal or is a healthy animal  
12 okay? What does that signal really mean? You know,  
13 it's these types of situations for phage therapy as an  
14 active therapy that don't seem that clear.

15 MR. STIBITZ: So, my view of pre-clinical  
16 data prior to Phase I trials is -- I mean, we would  
17 only be talking about safety studies. I think we are  
18 not surprised, that we kind of expect sponsors to do  
19 proof of concept, to do studies that convince them  
20 that proceeding with this makes sense, but in terms of  
21 what's actually required to go into the first human  
22 study we're really looking at safety, and I don't know  
23 if it's been clearly --

24 DR. GRUBER: No, I mean, I just wanted to  
25 add to what Scott was saying but I think this is such

1 a new area that we are actually, and this is part of  
2 the reason why we are having this workshop, because we  
3 would like to hear from you, too, you know, what makes  
4 sense, you know; what should be, you know,  
5 recommended. We are not having any requirements right  
6 now. I think this was already clearly stated by Doran  
7 to say that we're not asking for the typical GLP  
8 repeat dose toxicity studies that we have been asking  
9 for other products the Office of Vaccine regulates;  
10 and that we are also right now, we don't borrow from  
11 the small molecule drug development paradigm, but --  
12 and it was also mentioned if there are some directed  
13 safety studies that we feel would be needed, you know,  
14 when we have the discussions with you when you come  
15 and propose a clinical trial that is something that we  
16 can then further elaborate on, but at this point this  
17 is a fairly new area and field for us, and we're  
18 really, you know, trying to map out a  
19 non-clinical/clinical development program that makes  
20 sense and that is feasible and scientifically  
21 defensible, and that's actually one reason why we're  
22 having this workshop because we also would like to  
23 hear from you, you know, what does make scientific  
24 sense.

25 I think you've heard, you know,

1 proof-of-concept studies, you've heard, you know,  
2 characterization data that were outlined in Scott's  
3 talk, you know, *in vitro* studies as applicable, and  
4 that's where we are right now. But, again, I mean, we  
5 invite comments from the audience on these -- on these  
6 questions.

7 DR. CARLSON: And I should have started the  
8 panel off by saying what we're looking for is really a  
9 discussion between the regulators and interested  
10 parties to try and figure these things out in some  
11 instances.

12 DR. FIORE: So, I just want to add that the  
13 pre-clinical/non-clinical studies are often very  
14 important for you to inform your development plan, and  
15 if you have those studies, you know, we'd love to see  
16 them, but they could be more important for you in some  
17 cases than they are for us.

18 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Fair enough. Thank you.

19 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I have a question for  
20 colleagues from FDA, and this topic is about the phage  
21 substitution or phage addition in the approved  
22 cocktail, for example, and it has different, of  
23 course, subtopics like CMC and clinical efficacy.

24 The question is how do you think the  
25 industry and regulators would initiate the

1 discussions? What would it take to replace the phage  
2 in the approved cocktail from the CMC standpoint and  
3 from the clinical efficacy standpoint?

4 For example, stability data, we cannot  
5 generate let's say two years real-time real condition  
6 stability or if you're talking about clinical efficacy  
7 if the requirement would be go for Phase II, Phase III  
8 again this would make this impossible. Would you  
9 please elaborate on these a little bit? Where do we  
10 start to discuss this?

11 DR. FIORE: For myself and my colleagues  
12 here do you mind defining when -- are you talking  
13 about coming in with a defined cocktail and then  
14 switching out or are you talking about a panel of  
15 phages?

16 AUDIENCE MEMBER: The defined one.

17 DR. FIORE: Defined one, okay.

18 DR. STIBITZ: Well, again I'll ask a  
19 question back to you. Are we talking about a licensed  
20 product?

21 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yes.

22 DR. STIBITZ: And then you want to change  
23 the phage makeup.

24 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Right, yes, to replace or  
25 to add an additional one, for example.

1 DR. STIBITZ: Right. So, my understanding,  
2 and my colleagues can correct me if I'm wrong, is that  
3 you could submit a BLA supplement to make those  
4 changes to the product.

5 Now, exactly how at some point it could be  
6 different enough that we consider it to be a new  
7 product, but I think the devil as always is in the  
8 detail. So, are we talking about a similar phage from  
9 a genetic perspective and it's a variant? Is it a  
10 brand new phage that, you know, you just isolated?

11 I think -- I mean, we can talk about, you  
12 know, exactly how we want to pursue that in the  
13 structure of our regulatory process. In other words,  
14 is it a new BLA? Is it an amendment and so forth?  
15 But I think in general it will be possible with, you  
16 know, the same CMC information and enough information  
17 about the applicability of that phage to have it  
18 included.

19 I know that's not terribly precise but I  
20 think it's the best --

21 AUDIENCE MEMBER: This is going to be  
22 treated in a case by case depending on the data  
23 available, right?

24 DR. FIORE: I just want to clarify because  
25 what I heard you say is Phase II and Phase III, but

1 Scott's referring to a marketed product. When you use  
2 the word "license" we mean already approved and  
3 marketed, and out there for clinicians to use.

4 So, during your IND development you would  
5 submit that to your IND, or if you had a master file,  
6 which I am a huge proponent of, which would include  
7 all your CMC information, you would submit it to your  
8 master file or IND with the same type of information  
9 that you would submit with your other phage products.

10 After licensing it's a little bit different.  
11 It may be slightly more complicated and more  
12 expensive, but nonetheless it would go through the  
13 process that Scott was talking about.

14 DR. GRUBER: Yeah, I just wanted to add that  
15 it may be a little bit premature to discuss the type  
16 of product characterization data that's required after  
17 you have licensed a defined, you know, phage cocktail,  
18 because we have to actually see first what really  
19 makes sense, what product characterization data would  
20 be required, you know, all the way -- and if clinical  
21 data even would be required. I'm not saying that this  
22 would be the case but I think we are a little bit  
23 ahead of ourselves. I think the criteria or the type  
24 of information requested to support a supplement to a  
25 license for a defined phage cocktail is something that

1 we need to discuss, but once out there I think we  
2 would have a set, you know, of required information.  
3 I would not think that this would be case by case at  
4 that point in time, but I think right now we need to  
5 get some clarity first if you -- you know, let's say  
6 you have a defined cocktail that is not licensed or  
7 you were to swap phages, you know, what type of  
8 studies, what type of data would be needed. I think  
9 this is something that we would need to start in order  
10 to really define what is requested once these products  
11 are licensed.

12 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay, thank you.

13 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I understand there is a  
14 general assumption of safety for the most part, but I  
15 was curious if there are specific safety concerns.  
16 For example, I saw some recent findings about impact  
17 of phage therapies on the microbiome. So, I'm just  
18 curious your thoughts on that or if there are specific  
19 safety concerns that you may have going forward  
20 because I -- not that it was sort of brushed aside but  
21 I do understand in the field there is a general  
22 assumption of safety.

23 DR. FINK: So, I presented a couple of, you  
24 know, safety considerations that one might think about  
25 in my talk that are related either to, you know,

1 direct effect of the phage material on human tissues  
2 or indirect effects such as microbiome changes. I  
3 don't know if anyone else has any more specific --

4 DR. GILL: Do you want to go first? You go  
5 ahead.

6 DR. STIBITZ: All right. This will be  
7 short. I mean, I think the problem -- we have the  
8 tools to look at changes in microbiome that might be  
9 associated. We don't have the knowledge to interpret  
10 what those changes mean. So, in many ways we're in  
11 the same region that we're in with FMT and live  
12 biotherapeutic products to some extent.

13 And what was the other -- oh, and the other  
14 thing is just, I mean, certainly there will be some  
15 changes to the microbiome, but I think we all think  
16 that those will be more acceptable than the massive  
17 changes you get with wide spectrum antibiotics.

18 AUDIENCE MEMBER: A couple of small  
19 observations. Any decisions --

20 DR. CARLSON: We had a little more feedback  
21 on the last question here. Just a second.

22 DR. GILL: The other thing that we've talked  
23 about is, you know, the possibility of horizontal gene  
24 transfer made by phages and that can be screened for.  
25 We're looking for transducing phages. And so as was

1 brought up earlier some phages they degrade the host  
2 chromosome early in the infection cycle, and so if you  
3 use only phages that do that they're unlikely to  
4 transduce.

5           And another thing is that it depends on how  
6 the phage is packaged, their DNA into the head. So,  
7 some phages are quite permissive and others are very  
8 site-specific, and so if you have a phage that doesn't  
9 necessarily degrade the host chromosome, but if its  
10 DNA packaging is very, very specific to its own DNA  
11 then I think we were looking -- it's not that it will  
12 never ever transduce, but as long as the transduction  
13 is lower than what you normally get, you know, just  
14 from the normal traffic of DNA in that ecosystem, then  
15 I think it should be okay.

16           DR. CARLSON: Just to follow up briefly on  
17 the question of microbiome damage. Joe, is this  
18 something you guys consider in terms of antibiotics,  
19 even single-species antibiotics? Is that something  
20 that's looked at as a safety signal?

21           DR. TOERNER: That's a good question and we  
22 have not specifically looked at that issue. There are  
23 a number of concerns with it. How are -- you know,  
24 how are the cultures ascertained; what's the -- you  
25 know, how do you go about knowing what the microbiome

1 -- it's such a dynamic -- yeah, how would you begin to  
2 characterize what's considered to be normal and what's  
3 considered to be not normal.

4 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay. I was just going to  
5 say there are quite a few steady state late stage  
6 infections, chronic area infection, possibly Randy  
7 Fish's work on toe ulcers where there is no standard  
8 of care, and those can provide a way in. I'll say if  
9 you want to know about that I'll tell you afterwards,  
10 happily.

11 The second thing is, of course, in regard to  
12 the last question doses in phage therapy can be very  
13 tiny indeed, microgram, nanogram, even down in one  
14 study to picogram doses. So, input toxicity is an  
15 issue that needs to take that into account.

16 But my actual question was for Scott, and it  
17 was -- you made a very interesting comment that a GM  
18 product, it will be about what was added and how  
19 you're changing the GM agent which is then introduced.  
20 So, how would then would be regarded a zero residue  
21 removal? For example, taking out a lysogeny cassette  
22 from a phage where there are no lytic phages as with  
23 *Clostridium difficile*. If you did a zero residue  
24 removal of the lysogeny cassette, how would that be  
25 regarded?

1 DR. STIBITZ: Well, that's the only kind of  
2 removal we do in my lab, but you're talking about a  
3 completely clean deletion, for example, in-frame in a  
4 repressor gene, correct?

5 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yes.

6 DR. STIBITZ: So, I mean, I think the answer  
7 is really the same. I think phages that have been  
8 genetically modified or genetically engineered are not  
9 viewed really any differently than wild type phage  
10 with the exception that we know a change has been  
11 introduced and therefore we will want to understand  
12 the results of that change.

13 So, I think when you're adding something  
14 there are perhaps more questions than when you're  
15 simply removing the repressor.

16 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I have one question and  
17 second one is like a suggestion. The first question  
18 is, is there any chance to use historic safety data  
19 for phage therapy for this type of, you know, approval  
20 process?

21 DR. STIBITZ: You're talking about historic  
22 controls for a clinical trial?

23 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Right, historic safety  
24 data. Historic phage --

25 DR. STIBITZ: What the occurrence would have

1       been without the intervention, is that correct?

2                   AUDIENCE MEMBER: Right.

3                   DR. FINK: Or are you talking about  
4       historical safety data?

5                   AUDIENCE MEMBER: Historical safety data,  
6       mainly historical safety data.

7                   DR. FINK: Yeah, I don't know that we would  
8       really consider that. I guess it would depend on  
9       exactly what the nature of the data is.

10                  AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay.

11                  DR. FINK: Is it with the same product? Is  
12       it with a closely related product? How closely  
13       related? How long ago? How similar were the, you  
14       know, monitoring procedures to the procedures that,  
15       you know, we would typically require to determine  
16       safety? All of these are questions that, I think, you  
17       know, kind of stack the deck against, you know,  
18       relying on historical safety data.

19                  So, I don't want to come out and say under  
20       no circumstances absolutely, but it does seem a little  
21       bit unlikely for, you know, any particular given phage  
22       product what historical safety data might contribute  
23       to supporting licensure.

24                  AUDIENCE MEMBER: Okay.

25                  DR. STIBITZ: Do you have a particular

1 example in mind?

2 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yes. One thing was like  
3 1931 or sometimes they did a *Staph* or a -- I think it  
4 was a *Staphylococcus*, the clinical trial in USA.  
5 Yeah, so they did a trial and they showed that 31  
6 percent cases they are successful and there is not  
7 much adverse effect, something like that it was -- so,  
8 this type of data, can you mine this type of data,  
9 mining, and can, you know, produce to FDA to find out  
10 that what they think about it, you know.

11 DR. GRUBER: I don't have a lot add to what  
12 Doran just stated. I think it would really, really  
13 depend. So, let's say if a sponsor would come and  
14 propose that safety information to us as supportive or  
15 pivotal demonstration of safety for a product in a  
16 given target population against a specific condition  
17 in 2017, I think we would, of course, look at that  
18 data, but I don't think, you know, we can give you an  
19 answer here on the podium to say yes, that would be  
20 acceptable or no, it would not be acceptable. I mean,  
21 it really would depend.

22 But I have to agree with Doran. I think  
23 it's rather unlikely.

24 AUDIENCE MEMBER: So my second point is  
25 this. I am hearing a lot of -- about the problem with

1 the transductions. With this transduction things is  
2 happening in the environment, you know, millions and  
3 millions of time, and not only that, the plant  
4 biologists use phage randomly to hose down the trees  
5 and other things and they don't, you know, check all  
6 of their phage or phage composition, you know, for  
7 transduction ability.

8 So, why are you worried so much about that,  
9 you know, little transduction? What is going to  
10 happen when they inject some phage, you know, in human  
11 body?

12 DR. STIBITZ: So, this is the way that I  
13 think of it and I think I've convinced my colleagues  
14 to think about it. It's sort of a belt and suspenders  
15 approach.

16 If you're using strains to propagate your  
17 phage for therapy that are completely free of any  
18 troublesome genetic material, it's probably not as  
19 important. But it seems more and more likely as we're  
20 talking about isolating phage from nature for a  
21 particular patient isolate, that maybe -- and then  
22 perhaps adapting that phage to that isolate, it seems  
23 more and more likely that we will be growing the phage  
24 on virulent strains, and in that case I think it  
25 becomes essential to make sure that you're not

1 delivering to the infection site, you know, additional  
2 little care packages with weapons in them because this  
3 is not a theoretical concern at this point. You can  
4 measure the degree, the number of transducing  
5 particles in a lysate.

6 AUDIENCE MEMBER: So then why EPA doesn't  
7 control it? Because in environment if you release  
8 this type of transducible phage it can cause problem  
9 to transfer the antibiotic genes and other things.

10 So, my point is that why they don't control  
11 it and why when we come to this type of, you know,  
12 clinical treatment at that time we consider it so  
13 much. Environmental biologists are using phage, lots  
14 of phage. They don't do all those type of study and  
15 they release this phage for farm and also for poultry  
16 and industry, and they are using it, you know, to  
17 clean the poultry housings.

18 DR. STIBITZ: I'm not positive I understand  
19 your point, but I think what we're getting at is  
20 perhaps adding 10 to the 9th, 10 to the 10th phage  
21 particles into an existing infection with what 10 to  
22 the 5th, 10 to the 6th, 10 to the 7th, transducing  
23 particles if it's a transducing phage.

24 So, I mean, I think -- I believe you're  
25 making the argument, and correct me if I

1       misunderstood, that this is happening in nature all  
2       the time.

3               AUDIENCE MEMBER:   Yes.

4               DR. STIBITZ:   And so I think it's largely a  
5       numbers game to some extent.

6               DR. LEHMAN:   I'd also posit that the risk  
7       assessment for that is a little bit different when you  
8       have a human patient in front of you than in an  
9       environmental setting.

10              AUDIENCE MEMBER:   (Away from microphone.)

11              DR. LEHMAN:   It could easily be asked in the  
12       other direction as well.  If the human therapy field  
13       finds it important, should the animal side of things  
14       and the environmental side of things also find it  
15       important.  There are two directions in which to ask  
16       that question, and I know that at least -- my  
17       knowledge of the food animal portion of this is  
18       somewhat limited, but I know that in at least some  
19       cases the phages are intentionally applied after the  
20       animals have basically been removed.  They've been  
21       removed from interaction with the rest of the herd or  
22       the flock.

23              I'm not saying that that's happening in all  
24       cases but I know some of the people who are working on  
25       that do care about that because they are concerned

1 about confining the effect to just the treated  
2 population so as not to just have broad environmental  
3 exposure.

4 DR. LEHMAN: The comment was that EPA is  
5 asking these questions now.

6 DR. CARLSON: Go ahead.

7 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I have two easy questions  
8 and one comment. I know that a number of guidance you  
9 have new antibiotic development for a range of  
10 indications. I understand from your talk that we can  
11 reference those guidance for phage development, right?  
12 That's one.

13 The second one is a comment. The comment is  
14 that when we choose the standard treatment and we use  
15 the data actually for any drug where it's actually  
16 developed, when it's new and at that time it's no  
17 resistant, it's actually sensitive bacteria, therefore  
18 the data usually it's generated when it's --  
19 everything, it's sensitive, no resistance. But when  
20 the time you compare with it actually it's very high  
21 resistance, so the data in the literature usually not  
22 reflect the situation. So, that's my comment.

23 Actually whether it's non-inferiority or  
24 superiority, we would choose the marginal use at that  
25 time, sometime can be difficult.

1 DR. TOERNER: Thanks for the comment. Also  
2 our guidance documents clarify that when you are doing  
3 the non-inferiority analysis you have to ensure that  
4 the control drug has activity and is shown in *in vitro*  
5 susceptibility to be susceptible to the control drug  
6 in order to establish non-inferiority to the  
7 investigational drug. And so that is part of the  
8 population that's used for the efficacy analysis in a  
9 non-inferiority trial.

10 AUDIENCE MEMBER: The last one I ask that  
11 you opinion on the definition of the standard of care  
12 treatment. So, what is it? Is it the most commonly  
13 used drug or it's a drug you find in the society  
14 guideline?

15 DR. TOERNER: We define standard of care  
16 therapy and there's a definition we provide in the  
17 guidance documents, and it's a drug that's approved  
18 for the treatment, but we recognize in some cases it  
19 may not have that specific approval yet standard of  
20 care guidelines provide the recommendation for its  
21 use, and so we say if there's enough data you can  
22 provide to us a rationale for why you want to use a  
23 particular comparison drug, and there may be very good  
24 reasons for doing that.

25 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Yeah.

1 DR. TOERNER: You may want to have a blinded  
2 trial, and the only comparison drug that's  
3 administered twice daily, maybe one that doesn't have  
4 that specific indication. Yet it's recommended in  
5 treatment guidelines, or that the twice daily dosing  
6 isn't in the FDA labeling, but there are other data  
7 that support uses of twice-a-day administration. So,  
8 we are willing to be flexible and you just -- you  
9 know, sponsors can just provide a strong rationale in  
10 the use of the comparator drug and why it's felt to be  
11 effective.

12 AUDIENCE MEMBER: That's good because I do  
13 come across all these situations. I do see society  
14 guidelines recommend a drug which is not approved in  
15 the country. I do see recommended drug in the  
16 guidance it's not the most prescribed drug either.

17 DR. TOERNER: And it's important to  
18 recognize too, clinical trials are global, and so  
19 there are some drugs that are available in other  
20 countries that -- and they're available here but they  
21 may not have that specific indication that they have  
22 in the other countries, and we recognize that and look  
23 to professional societies for their guidelines as  
24 well.

25 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Thank you.

1 DR. FIORE: I would like to add to what Joe  
2 said to address your first comment about the  
3 guidances.

4 So, Center for Drugs and Center for  
5 Biologics we do have some shared guidances and we also  
6 have separate guidances, so just to keep that in mind,  
7 and a draft guidance is a draft because we're still  
8 accepting comments on them whereas the final guidance  
9 is final.

10 DR. FINK: And just to add on to that in  
11 case it isn't already clear. We don't have a guidance  
12 that is, you know, specific for -- that specifically  
13 covers phage therapy at this time. So, while Joe went  
14 over a number of CEDR guidances for antimicrobial  
15 products that, you know, portions of which may be  
16 relevant to development of phage therapy products  
17 those guidances were not written with phage therapy in  
18 mind, so just a caveat.

19 AUDIENCE MEMBER: Thank you. That was the  
20 best possible lead-in to my question.

21 So, we've talked about sort of two different  
22 arenas today. One is phage therapy and development of  
23 phage therapies and one is development of products,  
24 antimicrobials that meet an unmet need. And to your  
25 point exactly, there's a little bit of a disconnect in

1 my mind between what is most important to FDA on the  
2 unmet need side versus on the phage side, and I think  
3 that taking a step back we can sort of anticipate that  
4 phage are going to be, at least initially, in the  
5 clinic used in areas of unmet need, maybe areas of MDR  
6 or maybe areas where there is a second or third line  
7 defense rather than adopted out of the gate as a first  
8 line use. Therefore, this kind of puts them, we can  
9 predict, into an unmet need use kind of situation.

10 What I'm hearing is that for the  
11 antimicrobials that address an unmet need there's a  
12 lot of emphasis on PK and pre-clinical data whereas  
13 it's kind of the opposite for phage, where the PK  
14 situation is very hard to nail down because of the  
15 self-replicating nature of phage, not as concerned  
16 about the pre-clinical animal models, not even looking  
17 at the toxicology necessarily, and sort of moving  
18 straight into the later phases.

19 So, how do you synthesize the conversation  
20 that you all have had around phage development versus  
21 the conversation around products that address an unmet  
22 need when truly what we're talking about is a product  
23 in the Venn diagram of both of those things that  
24 overlaps both?

25 DR. FINK: So, can I take this first stab?

1       Okay.

2                   I think the point that I took away from  
3       Joe's talk is that for these products that are  
4       intended to address an unmet need, and phage therapy,  
5       as you've said, certainly, you know, would fall into  
6       that category for certain uses, it's going to be  
7       challenging to accumulate clinical data, clinical  
8       trial data of the type that would usually support  
9       licensure for antimicrobial products.

10                   And so what CDER has decided and what their  
11       advisory committee has agreed with them on is that  
12       some, you know, less robust package of clinical data  
13       could conceivably be supported with animal model data  
14       as well as PK data because those PK data are very  
15       useful. Now, for phage therapy products PK data may  
16       or may not be useful.

17                   And so if we were to, you know, go along a  
18       similar path, you know, we might say that licensure or  
19       demonstration of effectiveness could be supported by  
20       some, you know, package of clinical data that's  
21       feasible to achieve, plus some animal model data where  
22       the animal models are reasonably relevant, plus  
23       whatever other non-clinical or *in vitro* data might  
24       help to inform the effectiveness of the product. And  
25       so, you know, it may not turn out to be PK data, it

1 may turn out to be something else.

2 I would, you know, love to hear from the  
3 audience out there what -- what do you think those  
4 data should be.

5 DR. GRUBER: I just wanted to make one  
6 additional comment before we let you answer, and that  
7 is, you know, I think we're not really looking at this  
8 point to reconcile what, you know, is asked in the  
9 world of, you know, anti-infectives and, you know,  
10 phage therapy.

11 I think what was interesting is, you know,  
12 the paradigm that Joe's division worked through to  
13 see, you know, how can clinical trials for these type  
14 of products be conducted to support development and  
15 licensure, and we, you know, invited Joe today to  
16 really, you know, explain this to us to see how they  
17 approach this very complex field and to see can we  
18 borrow, are there some common, you know, themes or  
19 elements, but I don't think we are at the point yet  
20 that we can say okay, you know, this is sort of the  
21 paradigm that we would follow for phage therapy  
22 clinical trials, yet there are some interesting  
23 approaches and we would love to really discuss those  
24 further, and again hear your perspective on that.

25 DR. FIORE: I'm sorry, if I could just add

1 to that.

2 One of the elements that could also possibly  
3 be added to in a package is something that I haven't  
4 heard mentioned although I did see, I think, maybe on  
5 Joe's slide, is post-marketing, and then also some  
6 element of our expedited programs which is a guidance  
7 document. Thank you.

8 AUDIENCE MEMBER: And I had one more comment  
9 to follow up as well, and I apologize I neglected to  
10 introduce myself at the beginning. I'm Lucia Mokres.  
11 I'm the chief medical officer of EpiBiome, which is a  
12 small company working on bacteriophage therapies.

13 And I want to disagree with the comment that  
14 it's too soon to think about post-market manufacturing  
15 and changes to manufacturing. Early stage companies  
16 are really at the forefront at a lot of this  
17 development. A lot of big pharma companies are not  
18 willing to take on the enormous risk that it would  
19 take to get a phage therapy progressed through a  
20 clinical program.

21 As such, we're really contingent or  
22 dependent on the investment of venture capitalists.  
23 There is no grant -- amount of grant funding and  
24 non-diluted funding in the world that will bring a  
25 product all the way through the market, and one of the

1 questions that we always get from potential investors  
2 is what happens when resistance develops or a new  
3 strain emerges or, you know, like is this going to be  
4 like the flu vaccine that gets updated. And if we  
5 can't answer that they won't invest.

6 So, I'd like to encourage everybody in the  
7 room to kind of not be afraid to have those  
8 conversations early because they do matter and early  
9 stage companies do need to grapple with them, at least  
10 have an idea of what that might look like earlier than  
11 one might think if one had a continuous revenue stream  
12 and could just kind of cross that bridge later.

13 DR. GRUBER: Yeah, the point is well taken  
14 and perhaps I was misunderstood. What I was trying to  
15 convey here is that we're right now trying to really  
16 get our arms around, together with interested product  
17 developments, to see what are the criteria about which  
18 we can characterize, you know, a new phage to be  
19 introduced in a defined cocktail. And as long as we  
20 don't really have that clear and mapped out under the  
21 IND, you know, how can we provide guidance here, you  
22 know, for something that may be approved in the  
23 future?

24 But you're point is well taken. I mean,  
25 this is -- you know, clinical development strategies,

1 what would be required, you know, overall thinking  
2 about this, you know, how -- how the tests and  
3 methodologies apply then to a licensed product, I  
4 mean, is something that's, of course, part of the  
5 discussions to be having with the product developer  
6 during the IND stages. Thank you.

7 DR. FIORE: And just to add what Dr. Gruber  
8 said, it's going to be possible. We just can't give  
9 you a concrete answer. It's not like it's  
10 unfathomable. It's going to be possible. We just  
11 can't give you an exact concrete answer exactly how  
12 you're going to do it at this point in time.

13 DR. CARLSON: We can do one or maybe two  
14 more questions. We're pretty much out of time for the  
15 day.

16 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I'm JeShaune Jackson from  
17 EpiBiome as well. Promise we didn't plan or practice  
18 the synergies there but, you know, but great  
19 presentations individually and collectively a ton of  
20 knowledge so far on this panel.

21 My question goes to another kind of question  
22 that we get asked sometimes, too, and that's if you're  
23 treating sometimes like non-life-threatening diseases,  
24 where we talked about a single bacteria and, you know,  
25 *Pseudomonas* and all these other ones, but if it's non-

1 life-threatening, what is the potential option for  
2 doing like over-the-counter or off-the-shelf or, you  
3 know, or even like a nutraceuticals route as a -- like  
4 at what point does the FDA have to step in and  
5 regulate that for phage therapy?

6 DR. FIORE: If you're planning to use a  
7 product to cure, treat, mitigate or prevent a disease  
8 you need an IND. It doesn't have to be life-  
9 threatening. In fact, we have many products that  
10 luckily aren't used for life-threatening situations,  
11 but you need an IND and you go through the IND  
12 process, and we certainly can help you with that.

13 DR. FINK: The requirement -- one of the  
14 requirements for expanded access use, and I'm thinking  
15 about particularly emergency use for single patients,  
16 is that the product has to be intended to treat a  
17 serious or life-threatening disease or condition. So,  
18 it can be serious or life-threatening.

19 What does serious mean? Well, there's a --  
20 we typically draw on our guidance for expedited  
21 development of drugs to treat serious diseases or  
22 conditions, and under that guidance serious is defined  
23 as it causes a substantial impact on day-to-day  
24 function.

25 So, if the patient is suffering substantial

1 impact on day-to-day function from their disease or  
2 condition then that would be considered serious and  
3 would qualify for expanded access use.

4 DR. FIORE: I apologize. I thought you said  
5 non-serious.

6 AUDIENCE MEMBER: I'm saying non-serious,  
7 like, you know, acne, uncomplicated UTIs or like skin  
8 care, women's health.

9 DR. FIORE: So, if you're trying to treat  
10 you would need an IND and we would help you through  
11 that. So, the IND process is for any drug  
12 development. So, we don't -- it wouldn't be -- if it  
13 came to us it wouldn't be a nutraceutical or anything  
14 like that.

15 DR. GABARD: Maybe a couple of ideas to fuel  
16 the discussion. From our own experience with three  
17 different regulatory agencies I can provide some  
18 information to you.

19 Regarding the kinetics of the phages, what  
20 we have been agreeing with the three agencies is that  
21 we would test the concentration of phages at a  
22 thousand-fold -- one hundred to a thousand-fold above  
23 what was expected to be administered to the patients  
24 in healthy mice and in healthy pigs.

25 So, the mice got one hundred the times of

1 phage that we provided to the patients, and the pigs  
2 got one thousand-fold times the amount of phages that  
3 would be provided to the patients. Those animals were  
4 healthy without any bacterial infections, and we  
5 followed the course of the disappearance of the phages  
6 in organs and in fluids, and that was agreed by the  
7 agencies.

8           Concerning the effect of the phages in  
9 infected organisms, during the course of the Phagoburn  
10 studies we also have been following the concentration  
11 of the phages day after day each day of the treatment  
12 during 14 days to see what was happening to the amount  
13 of phages as the bacterial infection was disappearing,  
14 and that was agreed also by the authorities.

15           AUDIENCE MEMBER: Thank you.

16           DR. CARLSON: I think at this point unless  
17 anyone on the panel has anything else to say we're  
18 going to have to end the discussion for now, but I'm  
19 sure everyone is willing to stick around for a little  
20 while if you have more questions for them, and we'll  
21 continue again tomorrow starting at 8:30.

22           Roger, do we have any announcements or  
23 anything for tomorrow? No. Okay. Don't forget to  
24 bring your I.D. badges back tomorrow or it will be  
25 difficult to get into the building.

1                   Thanks, everybody. We'll see you tomorrow.

2                   (Applause.)

3                   (Whereupon, at 5:00 p.m., the workshop in  
4 the above-entitled matter was adjourned, to reconvene  
5 at 8:30 a.m. the following day, Tuesday, July 11,  
6 2017.)

7                   //

8                   //

9                   //

10                  //

11                  //

12                  //

13                  //

14                  //

15                  //

16                  //

17                  //

18                  //

19                  //

20                  //

21                  //

22                  //

23                  //

24                  //

25                  //

1 //

2 //

REPORTER'S CERTIFICATE

DOCKET NO.: N/A  
CASE TITLE: Bacteriophage Therapy Workshop  
HEARING DATE: July 10, 2017  
LOCATION: Rockville, Maryland

I hereby certify that the proceedings and evidence are contained fully and accurately on the tapes and notes reported by me at the hearing in the above case before the Department of Health & Human Services, U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

Date: July 10, 2017

**/s/**

David Jones  
Official Reporter  
Heritage Reporting Corporation  
Suite 206  
1220 L Street, N.W.  
Washington, D.C. 20005-4018